

English World



Dictionary

7

A2+



MACMILLAN

Liz Hocking

Macmillan Education
4 Crinan Street, London N1 9XW
A division of Macmillan Publishers Limited
Companies and representatives throughout the world

ISBN 978-0-230-03220-0

Text © Liz Hocking 2012
Design and Illustration © Macmillan Publishers Limited 2012

First published 2012

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, transmitted in any form, or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publishers.

Designed by Anna Stasinska
Page make-up by EXPO Holdings, Malaysia
Cover design by Oliver Design Ltd.

The publishers would like to thank the Macmillan teams around the world and Hala Fouad, Hoda Garraya, Caroline Toubia, Samira Mahameh, Adnan Bazbaz, Nisreen Attiya, Mohammed Abu Wafa, Fatima Saleh, Muna Ghazi, Anna Solovyeva, Tatyana Olshevskaya, Irina Shilyants, Irina Burdun, Elena Mitronova, Inna Daugavet, Olga Pavlenko, Svetlana Potanina, Irina Ostrovskaya, Zhanna Suvorova, Sergey Kozlov, Olga Matsuk, Elena Gordeeva and Marina Kuznetsova.

These materials may contain links for third party websites. We have no control over, and are not responsible for, the contents of such third party websites. Please use care when accessing them.

Although we have tried to trace and contact copyright holders before publication, in some cases this has not been possible. If contacted we will be pleased to rectify any errors or omissions at the earliest opportunity.

Printed and bound in Malaysia

2018 2017
10 9 8 7

ability

Aa

ability / ə'biləti / noun the skill someone needs to do something • *Harry has no **ability** in sport and he can't even throw or catch a ball.*

able / 'eɪb(ə)l / adjective having the skill or power to do something • *Harry is **able** to write very neatly but he can't spell! An elephant is **able** to lift a large tree with its trunk.*

abolish / ə'bolɪʃ / verb stop or end for ever • *Keeping people as slaves was **abolished** in America 150 years ago.*

about / ə'baʊt / adverb close to, nearly • *We moved to Africa when I was **about** six.*

above / ə'baʊ / preposition at a higher place than something else • *Your eyes are **above** your nose.*

abroad / ə'brɔ:d / adverb in or to another country • *My uncle often works **abroad** and he's in Canada at the moment.*

absolutely / 'æbsəlu:tli / adverb totally, completely • *I am **absolutely** certain that you will pass your exam because you've worked hard.*

accident / 'æksɪd(ə)nt / noun an event in which somebody is injured but not on purpose • *Ben's **accident** happened when he stood on the chair and it broke. **by accident**, not planned Sue stepped on Anna's foot **by accident**.*

according (to) / ə'kɔ:(r)dɪŋ (,tu) / preposition in the opinion of • ***According to** Professor Binks, this vase is more than 4,000 years old.*

accordion / ə'kɔ:(r)dɪən / noun a musical instrument

accurate / 'ækjʊrət / adjective correct in every detail • *When you are doing science, all measurements must be **accurate**.*

ache / eɪk / verb to feel painful • *Anna went home from school because her head was **aching**.*

acrobat / 'ækrə'bæt / noun a performer who balances, jumps and turns upside-down to entertain people

across / ə'krɒs / preposition from one side to the other • *Sam walked **across** the road.*

act / ækt / verb to be a character in a play or film • *We are going to **act** Shakespeare in the school theatre.*

advantage

Aa

action / 'ækʃ(ə)n / noun

- 1 something somebody does • *When Ben got home, his first **action** was to switch on his computer.*
- 2 movement • *When we were little, we used to sing songs and do the **actions**.*

active / 'æktɪv / adjective

- 1 always ready and able to do things • *Tom is an **active** boy and he swims every day.*
- 2 ready and working • *This **active** volcano often has smoke coming from the top.*

activity / æk'tɪvəti / noun something fun and interesting that people do • *Sam's favourite **activity** is playing computer games.*

actor / 'æktə(r) / noun a person who performs in a play or film

actually / 'æktʃʊəli / adverb in fact, really • *The London Eye isn't **actually** an eye, it's a big metal wheel.*

ad / æd / noun a short form of 'advertisement'

address / ə'dres / noun

- 1 the number and name of the apartment, street and town or city where somebody lives
- 2 a talk or presentation • *The scientist's **address** to the professors was very interesting.*

address / ə'dres / verb

- 1 to write the name and place on an envelope or parcel where it is to be sent • *Nina **addressed** the envelope, put the letter inside and put it in the postbox.*
- 2 to speak to someone in a formal way • *The head teacher **addressed** the students on the subject of motivation.*

admire / əd'maɪə(r) / verb

- 1 to have a very good opinion about someone or something • *We all **admired** Ben when he learned to speak Spanish in a year.*
- 2 to think something is good and to find it pleasing • *Mrs Brown **admired** the colourful plants in the flower shop.*

adore / ə'dɔ:(r) / verb to love very much • *My cousin **adores** his new wife and he gives her flowers every week.*

adult / 'ædʌlt, ə'dʌlt / noun a grown-up person or animal

advantage / əd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ / noun a good thing that helps you to succeed or achieve something • *Being tall is an **advantage** if you play basketball.*

adventure

Aa

adventure / əd'ventʃə(r) / noun a time or an event when many exciting things happen • *Our journey to find the lost city was a great **adventure**.*

advert / 'ædvɜ:(r)t / noun short form of 'advertisement'

advertisement / əd'veɜ:(r)tɪsmənt / noun an announcement in words, and often with pictures, in a newspaper, on TV or the internet that encourages people to buy something or do something • *Lots of people saw the **advertisement** for cheap computers and all of them were sold.*

advice / əd'vaɪs / noun sensible ideas • *When my aunt got married, Grandma gave her lots of helpful **advice**.*

advise / əd'vaɪz / verb to give someone your opinion of the best thing to do in a particular situation • *Our guide **advised** us not to go into the jungle alone.*

aerial / 'eəriəl / adjective in the air • *The planes did a wonderful **aerial** display across the whole sky.*

afford / ə'fɔ:(r)d / verb to have enough money to pay for something • *Sam would like to buy a motorbike but he can't **afford** it.*

after / 'ɑ:ftə(r) / preposition

1 later than • ***After** school, the students practised their play.*

2 next in order • *May comes **after** April.*

afternoon / ,ɑ:ftə(r)'nu:n / noun the period of the day from 12 noon to the evening

again / ə'gen / adverb one more time • *Will you play that song **again**, please?*

against / ə'genst / preposition in competition with • *The Red team is playing **against** the Blue team.*

age / eɪdʒ / noun how old somebody or something is • *What **age** is your sister?*

ages / eɪdʒɪz / noun (plural) a long time • *We've been waiting for the bus for **ages**.*

ago / ə'gəʊ / adverb in the past • *This hospital was built two years **ago**.*

agree / ə'gri: / verb to have the same thoughts and opinions as another person • *Ben **agreed** with Sam that the film was awful and they left before the end.*

although

agreement / ə'gri:mənt / noun

1 when two people have the same opinion about something • *Unfortunately, Mum and Dad are in **agreement** about a new TV – we're not getting one!*

2 an arrangement or decision about what to do • *Ben and Dad came to an **agreement** about where to go on holiday.*

agriculture / 'ægrɪ,kʌltʃə(r) / noun the activity of growing crops and plants for food

air / eə(r) / noun the mixture of gases that we breath and that makes up the atmosphere of the earth • *In the mountains, the **air** is fresh but in cities it is often polluted.*

airline / 'eə(r),laɪn / noun a business company that flies airplanes

airport / 'eə(r),pɔ:(r)t / noun a place where planes land and take off • *When you fly to another country, you arrive at the **airport**.*

album / 'ælbəm / noun a large book with blank pages onto which pictures, often photos, can be stuck and kept for looking at again at another time

alert / ə'lɜ:(r)t / noun a warning or important reminder • *The police sent out an **alert** about the danger of forest fires.*

alien / 'eɪliən / noun a strange and unknown creature from space

alive / ə'laɪv / adjective living, not dead • *This tree has no leaves but you can see tiny green buds so it's definitely **alive**. come alive, full of excitement and activity In Spain the streets come **alive** in the evening.*

allow / ə'laʊ / verb let someone do something • *We're sometimes **allowed** to start our homework before the end of the lesson.*

almost / 'ɔ:lməʊst / adverb nearly • *Ben is **almost** as tall as Sam who is one centimetre taller.*

alone / ə'ləʊn / adjective without another person • *After the children went home, the teacher was **alone** in the classroom.*

although / ɔ:l'ðəʊ / conjunction

1 though, in spite of the fact that • ***Although** it was sunny, the wind was freezing cold.*

2 but • *The film was good, **although** I wouldn't go and see it again.*

altogether

altogether / ˌɔːltəˈɡeðə(r) / adverb including everyone or everything • *There are 30 students in the class **altogether**.*

always / ˈɔːlweɪz / adverb every time • *I **always** catch the bus to school.*

amazed / əˈmeɪzd / adjective very surprised and pleased • *We were all **amazed** when Dad won the marathon.*

amazement / əˈmeɪzmənt / noun surprise and wonder • *Everyone gasped in **amazement** when the clown juggled with ten bananas.*

amazing / əˈmeɪzɪŋ / adjective surprising and wonderful • *The concert was **amazing** and everyone clapped and cheered for ages at the end.*

ambulance / ˈæmbjuləns / noun a vehicle for taking sick or injured people to hospital

among / əˈmʌŋ / preposition in the middle of • *There was a house **among** the trees.*

amount / əˈmaʊnt / noun the number, size or weight of something • *There was a small **amount** of sugar in the jar.*

anchor / ˈæŋkə(r) / noun the large piece of metal with hooks that is used to attach a boat to the sea bed • *When the ship was near the island, the sailors threw the heavy **anchor** into the sea.*

ancient / ˈeɪnʃ(ə)nt / adjective very old • *These **ancient** ruins were discovered 300 years ago.*

anger / ˈæŋɡə(r) / noun the strong feeling of being displeased • *The king's **anger** at losing the battle was terrible.*

anger / ˈæŋɡə(r) / verb to make someone angry • *Jack **angered** his father by not doing his homework properly.*

angry / ˈæŋɡri / adjective very cross and displeased • *Dad was **angry** when we broke the window.*

animal / ˈænim(ə)l / noun a living creature

animate / ˈænɪmənt / verb to make something lively and interesting • *We could **animate** our display by showing a DVD and playing some music.*

animation / ˌæniˈmeɪʃ(ə)n / noun a way of making characters move in cartoon films using thousands of drawings

appearance

Aa

ankle / ˈæŋk(ə)l / noun the bottom part of the leg above the foot • *Lila's long dress covered her **ankles**.*

announcement / əˈnaʊnsmənt / noun a short piece of information that is told to people • *At the station we heard an **announcement** telling us that our train was late.*

annoy / əˈnɔɪ / verb to make someone or something cross • *People who drop rubbish in the street really **annoy** me because someone else has to clear it up.*

another / əˈnʌðə(r) / adjective one more person or thing of the same type as before • *My aunt has just had **another** boy and now she has four sons.*

answer / ˈɑːnsə(r) / noun a written or spoken reply to a question • *Everyone got the right **answers** in the English test.*

answer / ˈɑːnsə(r) / verb to give a reply to a question • *The students asked a lot of questions and the professor **answered** them all. In this exam you must **answer** all the questions.*

antler / ˈæntlə(r) / noun one of the two tall, bony shapes like branches that grow on a reindeer's head

anxious / ˈæŋkʃəs / adjective worried • *Try not to be **anxious** about the exam.*

anyone / ˈeni,wʌn / pronoun a person • *Can you see **anyone** in the park?*

anyway / ˈeni,wʌɪ / adverb in any event, whatever the situation • *I don't like this dress and **anyway**, it's much too big.*

apart / əˈpɑː(r)t / adverb

1 away, at a short distance • *Anna was cross with her friends so she sat **apart** from them.*

2 into two or more pieces • *Both of the boys pulled the toy plane and it suddenly came **apart**.*

apartment / əˈpɑː(r)tment / noun a home in a block of flats • *Our **apartment** has three bedrooms.*

appear / əˈpiə(r) / verb to come into sight • *The wolf **appeared** on the forest path.*

appearance / əˈpiərəns / noun

1 how someone or something looks • *The man had a strange **appearance** because his hair was bright red.*

2 the act of being seen • *The clown jumped out of the box and his sudden **appearance** made everyone laugh.*

applaud

Aa

applaud / ə'plɔ:d / verb to clap hands because something is good • *The people **applauded** at the end of the play.*

apple / 'æp(ə)l / noun a round red, yellow or green fruit with a smooth skin that grows on trees

appointment / ə'pɔɪntmənt / noun an arrangement for something to be done at a particular time • *I couldn't play chess after school yesterday because I had an **appointment** at the dentist.*

approximately / ə'prɒksɪmətli / adverb about, not exactly • *This new suspension bridge is **approximately** 400 metres long.*

apron / 'eɪprən / noun a shaped piece of cloth that is worn to protect the front of a person's clothing when they are cooking, painting or doing similar work

aquarium / ə'kwɛəriəm / noun a large glass container for keeping fish in

arch / ɑ:(r)tʃ / noun the curved shape of an opening in a building or bridge

archaeologist / ɑ:(r)ki'ɒlədʒɪst / noun a person who looks for very old things in the ground • *A team of **archaeologists** found the king's tomb.*

architect / 'ɑ:(r)ki'tekt / noun a person who is trained to design buildings and structures

area / 'ɛəriə / noun a large piece of land • *This **area** is a wildlife park.*

argue / 'ɑ:(r)ɡju / verb

- 1 to disagree • *The two little boys **argued** about whose ball it was and in the end they had a fight.*
- 2 put a point of view • *In his essay, Ben **argued** that global warming was caused by human behaviour.*

argument / 'ɑ:(r)ɡjumənt / noun a discussion when two people do not agree about something • *Pete wanted to use Ben's computer and they had a big **argument** because Ben wouldn't let him.*

arm / ɑ:(r)m / noun one of the two long parts of your body that grow from your shoulders and which have your hands on the ends

armchair / 'ɑ:(r)m,tʃeə(r) / noun a soft, comfortable chair with sides for resting your arms on

asleep

army / 'ɑ:(r)mi / noun a very large group of fighters

around / ə'raʊnd / adverb

- 1 in many places • *The boys went onto the pitch and began to kick the ball **around**.*
- 2 in a circle • *The children made a ring then held hands and walked **around**.*

around / ə'raʊnd / preposition surrounding • *Mum put a shawl **around** Grandma's shoulders.*

arrange / ə'reɪndʒ / verb to put in the right place and in order • *Nina **arranged** her photos on the shelf.*

arrangement / ə'reɪndʒmənt / noun the organising of events such as a meeting or a journey • *Dad made all the **arrangements** for our holiday in London.*

arrival / ə'reɪv(ə)l / noun the time when someone or something arrives • *We waited excitedly for the plane's **arrival**.*

arrive / ə'reɪv / verb to come to a place • *We **arrived** home yesterday.*

arrow / 'æraʊ / noun

- 1 a stick with one sharp end and feathers at the other end • *In some places people still use **arrows** to kill animals.*
- 2 a shape like an arrow → that is used to point the way

art / ɑ:(r)t / noun objects that have been created for people to look at such as paintings, drawings and sculptures • *Let's visit the Museum of Modern **Art**.*

artist / 'ɑ:(r)tɪst / noun a person who paints, draws or makes sculptures

arts / ɑ:(r)ts / noun (plural) artistic activities such as painting, drawing, music, dance, theatre, literature • *In the past, kings and other rich people did a lot to encourage the **arts**.*

ascend / ə'send / verb to go up or climb something • *The climbers **ascended** the north side of the mountain.*

ask / ɑ:sk / verb to put a question to someone • *Ben **asked** his teacher what the homework was.*

asleep / ə'sli:p / adjective not awake, eyes shut and not conscious • *Nina didn't hear the storm last night because she was **asleep**.*

aspect

aspect / 'æspekt / noun a particular part or feature of something • *Which **aspect** of English do you find most difficult, spelling or grammar?*

astonish / ə'stɒnɪʃ / verb to surprise and amaze • *Dad **astonished** everyone by learning to speak Chinese.*

astonished / ə'stɒnɪʃt / adjective very surprised • *Sam was **astonished** when he won the class prize.*

astonishing / ə'stɒnɪʃɪŋ / adjective amazing and pleasantly surprising • *The teacher was delighted at the **astonishing** success of her students.*

astronaut / 'æstrə,nɔ:t / noun a person who travels in space

astronomer / ə'strɒnəmə(r) / noun a person who studies the stars and planets

astronomy / ə'strɒnəmi / noun the study of the stars and planets

attack / ə'tæk / verb the action when one person or thing fights against another • *The soldiers **attacked** the castle at dawn.*

attractive / ə'træktɪv / adjective nice to look at • *The pretty garden makes this house very **attractive**.*

audience / 'ɔ:diəns / noun the people watching a play, concert or any performance inside or outside

aunt / aʊnt / noun the sister of your mother or father

autobiography / ,ɔ:təbaɪ'ɒgrəfi / noun a book about a person's life, written by the person • *Mary Seacole called her **autobiography** 'Wonderful Adventures of Mrs Seacole in Many Lands'.*

automatic / ,ɔ:tə'mætɪk / adjective happening by itself • *This **automatic** washing machine washes the clothes for an hour then it turns itself off.*

automatically / ,ɔ:tə'mætɪkli / adverb as the usual way of doing things • *The bell rang and the students **automatically** began to pack up their books.*

autumn / 'ɔ:təm / noun the season between summer and winter

avoid / ə'vɔɪd / verb to try not to hit • *The car turned suddenly to **avoid** the man in the road.*

awful / 'ɔ:f(ə)l / adjective terrible • *The film was **awful** and we didn't like it at all.*

bamboo

axe / æks / noun a sharp metal tool with a long wooden handle for chopping wood

Bb

Bb

baby / 'beɪbi / noun a very young child

back / bæk / noun

1 the upper part of your body on the other side to your chest • *In many countries, mothers carry their babies on their **backs**.*

2 the place farthest from the front • *The letter was hidden at the **back** of the desk.*

back / bæk / adverb away from • *The lion roared and the tourists jumped **back**.*

bad / bəd / adjective

1 not good • *Ben got **bad** marks in the test.*

2 not behaving well • *My cousin was very **bad** at kindergarten and my aunt had to take him home.*

badminton / 'bædmɪntən / noun a game similar to tennis played on a court in which two or four players use light rackets to hit a small, light object called a shuttlecock over a net

bag / bæɡ / noun

1 a container made of paper or plastic for carrying shopping in

2 a container made of cloth or leather for carrying personal possessions in • *Sometimes the police look inside passengers' **bags** at the airport.*

bake / beɪk / verb to cook in an oven

baker / 'beɪkə(r) / noun a person who bakes bread and sells it

balcony / 'bælkəni / noun part of a building that is out of doors • *There are plants and flowers on our **balcony**.*

ball / bɔ:l / noun a round object used in different games such as basketball and football

ballet / 'bæleɪ / noun a kind of dance performance

balloon / bə'lʊm / noun a soft shape that can be filled with air until it is round and floats in the air

bamboo / ,bæm'bu: / noun a tall forest plant that grows in parts of China • *Pandas live in **bamboo** forests and eat the leaves.*

ban

Bb

ban / bæn / verb to stop something from happening or being used • *Smoking is **banned** in this restaurant and cars are **banned** from the city square.*

banana / bə'na:nə / noun a long, soft, sweet fruit with a yellow skin that grows in bunches

band / bænd / noun

1 a circle of metal • *The princess wore a silver **band** around her head.*

2 a group of musicians • *Our favourite **band** is playing in the city park tonight.*

bandage / 'bændɪdʒ / noun a long strip of cloth used to cover and tie round a wound or injury • *When Ben cut his finger badly, Mum put a **bandage** on it.*

bank / bæŋk / noun

1 the edge of the land next to a river • *Plants and trees often grow on the **banks** of a river.*

2 a building where business to do with money is carried out • *Dad went to the **bank** to take out some money.*

bar / bɑ:(r) / noun a long thin metal rod • *My uncle has **bars** across his windows to stop thieves from breaking in.*

barbed wire / ,bɑ:(r)bd 'waɪə(r) / noun long thin metal wire with short, sharp points on it used for fences • *The **barbed wire** fence stopped the cows from getting out.*

bark / bɑ:(r)k / noun the outside covering of a tree trunk • *Some trees have smooth **bark** and some have rough **bark**.*

bark / bɑ:(r)k / verb to make a short loud sound (usually made by a dog or wolf) • *We heard a dog **barking** in the distance.*

barn / bɑ:(r)n / noun a large farm building for keeping animals in

barrier / 'bæriə(r) / noun

1 a fence or wall that stops someone or something from going from one area to another • *After the tree fell down, the police put a **barrier** across the road.*

2 a fact or situation that stops something from happening • *Laziness is a **barrier** to learning.*

baseball / 'beɪsbɔ:l / noun an American game for two teams with nine players in which a player hits a ball with a bat and tries to score points

beanstalk

by running round four bases while the other team catches the ball

basically / 'beɪsɪkli / adverb

1 in the most important aspects • ***Basically**, your essay is very good but you should check your spelling.*

2 (spoken) used to emphasise the important point in what you are saying • ***Basically**, that film is complete rubbish so don't go and see it.*

basket / 'bɑ:skɪt / noun a container for carrying or putting things in, often woven from natural materials such as reeds, parts of other plants or strips of wood

basketball / 'bɑ:skɪtbɔ:l / noun a team sport in which players score by throwing a ball into a net called a basket

bath / bɑ:θ / noun a long deep container that you fill with water then get in it and wash yourself

bathroom / 'bɑ:θru:m / noun the room in the house where the bath or shower is and where you wash yourself

battery / 'bæt(ə)ri / noun an object that holds electricity and is used to make things work • *Dad put a new **battery** in my torch before we went into the cave.*

battle / 'bæt(ə)l / noun a fight between two armies

bay / beɪ / noun a part of the coast where the land curves inwards creating an area of calmer water • *In the summer you can take a boat across the **bay**.*

beach / bi:tʃ / noun the sandy area next to the sea

beak / bi:k / noun the hard pointed part of a bird's mouth

beam / bi:m / noun

1 a long line of light • *The **beam** of the torch showed the old mill clearly.*

2 a long, thick piece of wood used to make a simple bridge or to support the roof of a building

bean / bi:n / noun the seed of some plants that can be cooked and eaten

beanstalk / 'bi:nstɔ:k / noun a plant that beans grow on

beard

beard / brɔ(r)d / noun the thick growth of hairs on a man's chin and face

beast / bi:st / noun an animal or insect

beat / bi:t / verb

1 to hit someone to hurt them • *The cruel man beat his dog with a stick.*

2 to mix hard and make smooth • *When you make a cake you have to break eggs and beat them for several minutes.*

3 to get more points in a game than another team or opponent • *We beat the City team by four goals!*

beautiful / 'bjutəf(ə)l / adjective lovely and attractive to look at

because / bi'koz / conjunction for the reason that • *Don't run for the bus because it has already gone.*

beckon / 'bekən / verb to sign to someone to come to you • *The teacher beckoned to Ben and he went to her at once.*

become / bi'kʌm / verb to change and be different or new • *Shadows become longer in the evening. A caterpillar will become a butterfly. My cousin has just become a doctor.*

bed / bed / noun the long flat piece of furniture that you sleep on

bedroom / 'bed,rʊm / noun the room where your bed is and where you sleep

bee / bi: / noun a flying insect that makes sweet honey

beef / bi:f / noun meat that comes from cattle
beefburger, cooked minced beef in a bread roll with salad and sauces

before / bi'fɔ:(r) / adverb earlier than • *You must be at the station before ten because that's when the train leaves.*

begin / bi'gɪn / verb to start

beginning / bi'gɪnɪŋ / noun the start • *The beginning of the story was exciting so I went on reading.*

behave / bi'herv / verb

1 to do things in a particular way • *My little cousin cried and behaved badly at the mall so my aunt took him home.*

2 to be polite and helpful • *Aunt Meg is coming to lunch today so please behave while she is here.*

benefit

behaviour / bi'heɪvjə(r) / noun

1 the way in which someone or something does things • *The man's behaviour was strange and the policeman became suspicious.*

2 the daily actions of a person or animal • *The cubs are playing attack games, which is the usual behaviour of young lions.*

behind / bi'hænd / adverb

1 staying after someone or something has gone • *The bus went early and Ben was left behind.*

2 following someone or something • *Pete went first and Sam came behind.*

behind / bi'hænd / preposition

1 a place at the back of someone or something • *The man pushed me from behind.*

2 a place on the furthest side of something • *The thief hid behind the wall when he heard the police car.*

believable / bi'li:vəb(ə)l / adjective can be believed • *In the past, people thought that a flat world was completely believable.*

believe / bi'li:v / verb to think that something is true • *I believe we've met before.*

bell / bel / noun

1 a metal object shaped like a cup turned upside-down that makes a sound when it is hit • *The bells at the top of the tower are rung on special occasions.*

2 a piece of electrical equipment that makes a sound to get someone's attention • *When you arrive, press the bell on the door and someone will come and open it.*

belong / bi'lɒŋ / verb to be owned by • *This house belongs to my uncle.*

below / bi'ləu / preposition

1 under, in a lower position • *The cat is sleeping below the window.*

2 less than • *Five is a number below ten.*

belt / belt / noun a thin length of leather or cloth that you wear round your waist to hold your trousers up or for decoration

bench / bentʃ / noun a long seat for several people to sit on at one time

benefit / 'benɪfɪt / noun good thing • *The new playground in the park will be of benefit to the children.*

Bb

beside

Bb

beside / bi'saɪd / preposition next to • The museum is **beside** the station so we haven't got far to walk.

best / best / adjective better than all the others • Ben is the **best** at maths and he always comes first in the tests.

better / 'betə(r) / adjective good compared to another one • This book is **better** than that book because it has more pictures.

between / bi'twi:n / preposition in the middle of two things • May comes **between** April and June.

big / big / adjective of large size • A whale is a **big** sea creature.

bike / baɪk / noun a machine with two wheels that you can ride and travel on

bin / bɪn / noun a container for putting rubbish in

binoculars / bɪ'nɒkjʊlə(r)z / noun (plural) special glasses used outside that make distant objects look bigger

biological / ,baɪə'lɒdʒɪk(ə)l / adjective to do with biology

biology / baɪ'ɒlədʒi / noun the study of living things

bird / bɜ:(r)d / noun a creature with feathers that lays its eggs in nests **bird's eye view**, the way a bird sees things when flying • If you go to the top of a tall building and look down, you get a **bird's eye view** of the ground below.

birthday / 'bɜ:(r)ðdeɪ / noun the day in the year on which you were born • Harry's **birthday** is on 1st July.

bit / bɪt / noun small piece, part or amount of something • This **bit** of the story is really funny.
a bit, a little I've lost my phone so I'm feeling **a bit** cross.

bite / baɪt / verb

1 to cut or break something with your teeth, usually to eat it • Anna **bite** off a small piece of cake and tasted it thoughtfully.

2 the attack action of some animals when they are scared or angry • The explorer stood on the snake by mistake and it **bite** him.

bite / baɪt / noun

1 the act of cutting or breaking something with your teeth • Ben took a huge **bite** out of the pizza.

book

2 the place where your skin is broken by an insect or animal • Look at all the insect **bites** on my leg!

blackberry / 'blækberi / noun a very small black fruit

blade / bleɪd / noun a thin flat piece of metal • This knife has a very sharp **blade**.

blanket / 'blæŋkɪt / noun a bed cover made of wool or another soft material

blink / blɪŋk / verb to shut then open your eyes very quickly • If you get dust in your eyes, **blink** a few times and they'll feel better.

blizzard / 'blɪzə(r)d / noun very bad weather when snow falls fast and heavily • You can easily get lost in a **blizzard**.

block / blɒk / noun

1 a solid shape with six sides • The Great Pyramid was built of huge **blocks** of stone.

2 a large building with several floors • Our apartment **block** is near the station.

blood / blʌd / noun the red liquid inside your body • Sam realised he had cut himself when he saw **blood** on his knee.

blouse / blaʊz / noun a piece of clothing worn by women that is like a man's shirt

board / bɔ:(r)d / noun

1 a flat area fixed to the wall for writing on in the classroom

2 a flat piece of wood for playing games on • For chess, players use a **board** with black and white squares. **on board**, on a ship or train When the passengers were **on board**, the train left.

boat / bəʊt / noun a wooden or metal structure than floats on water and carries people and objects

bob / bɒb / verb to go up and down with the movement of the waves • The boats were **bobbing** up and down on the sea.

boil / bɔɪl / verb to heat liquid to the point where bubbles appear on the surface

bone / bəʊn / noun the hard parts inside the body of a person or animal • You can feel your **bones** under your skin.

book / bu:k / noun lots of sheets of paper fixed together with words and pictures • My favourite **book** is about a horse.

booking

booking / 'bʊkɪŋ / noun an arrangement to do something • *We've made a **booking** to stay in a hotel.*

boot / bu:t / noun strong footwear, sometimes covering the ankle, used for outdoor activities and sports • *When you climb in the mountains you must have really good **boots** because the rocks are rough.*

border / 'bɔ:(r)də(r) / noun a band along the edge of something • *Molly's blue skirt has a red **border** round the bottom.*

bore / bɔ:(r) / verb

1 to cut deep into the ground by machine • *The engineers **bored** a hole through the rock to make a tunnel.*

2 to be uninteresting • *Sports programmes **bore** me so I don't watch them.*

bored / bɔ:(r)d / adjective not interested • *This film is silly and I'm really **bored**!*

boredom / 'bɔ:(r)dəm / noun the feeling of being bored • *Prisoners often suffer from **boredom** because they sometimes have nothing to do.*

boring / 'bɔ:rɪŋ / adjective

1 not at all interesting • *Some people think that computer games are **boring** but some people say that they are really good fun.*

2 cutting • *This small **boring** tool is used by carpenters.*

born / bɔ:(r)n / adjective existing as a result of birth • *Lots of babies are **born** in hospitals.*

borrow / 'bɒrəʊ / verb to use something that belongs to another person for a short time • *If you want to **borrow** something, you must always ask first.*

both / bəʊθ / pronoun the two • ***Both** Anna and Nina enjoyed the science lesson.*

bottle / 'bɒt(ə)l / noun a glass or plastic container for keeping liquid in

bottom / 'bɒtəm / noun the lowest part • *There is water at the **bottom** of the well.*

bow / bəʊ / noun a long, curved piece of wood with string that is used for shooting an arrow

bowl / bəʊl / noun

1 a container for keeping food or liquid in • *There was a **bowl** of fruit on the table.*

2 a container for eating from • *I'd like a **bowl** of soup, please.*

breakfast

box / bɒks / noun a rectangular container made from cardboard, plastic or metal that can be used for keeping things in or for packing things in to send to someone

boy / bɔɪ / noun a male child

brain / breɪn / noun the large soft lump inside your head which you use to think, move and do things • *Every day, scientists discover more about how the **brain** works.*

brainwave / 'breɪnweɪv / noun a very good idea

branch / brɑ:ntʃ / noun the part of a tree that carries leaves and fruit

brave / breɪv / adjective not easily scared, having courage • *It was **brave** of the firemen to go into the burning building.*

bravery / 'breɪvəri / noun brave actions • *The man's **bravery** was rewarded with a medal.*

bread / bred / noun a food that is made from baked flour and water

break / breɪk / noun the short time for playing during the school day

break / breɪk / verb

1 to harm something so you cannot use it • *Joe stood on his toy car and he **broke** it.*

2 to do better than • *Fred ran 100 metres in 12 seconds and he **broke** the school record.*

phrasal verbs

1 **break down** to stop working • *All the traffic lights **broke down** at once and there were traffic jams everywhere.*

2 **break into** to enter by force • *The firemen had to **break into** the house because the people were asleep.*

3 **break off** to separate from the main part • *Lots of branches were **broken off** the trees by the strong winds.*

4 **break out** to start or begin suddenly • *When the war **broke out**, many people left their homes.*

5 **break up** break into pieces • *The ice **broke up** as the weather got warmer.*

breakable / 'breɪkəb(ə)l / adjective can be broken • *Be careful of Mum's vase because it's **breakable**.*

breakfast / 'brekfəst / noun the first meal of the day that you eat before you start doing things

Bb

breath

Bb

breath / breθ / noun the air that goes in and out of your body when you breathe **take one's breath away**, to be so impressed by someone or something that you stop breathing for a moment • *When I first saw the king's wonderful palace, it **took my breath away**.*

breathe / bri:ð / verb the natural process of taking air in and out of your body

breathlessly / 'breθlɪsli / adverb in a way that is without much breath • *After he won the race, Sam spoke **breathlessly**.*

brehtaking / 'breθ,teɪkɪŋ / adjective extremely impressive or beautiful • *The view from the top of the London Eye is **brehtaking**.*

breeze / bri:z / noun gentle wind • *The **breeze** blew Anna's hair around her face.*

brick / brik / noun a small block used to make buildings and walls

bride / braɪd / noun the woman who is marrying a man • *The **bride** wore a white dress and the groom wore a white suit.*

bridge / brɪdʒ / noun a structure that is built across a river so people and traffic can cross

briefcase / 'bri:fkeɪs / noun a case for keeping letters and papers in • *The professor put his **briefcase** on the floor beside his desk.*

brightly / 'braɪtli / adverb with a lot of light • *The fire was burning **brightly**.*

brilliance / 'brɪljəns / noun the strong brightness of something • *The **brilliance** of the sun can damage your eyes so wear your sunglasses.*

brilliant / 'brɪljənt / adjective

1 shining strongly • *The sea was **brilliant** in the sunlight.*

2 very good • *That's a **brilliant** idea!*

bring / brɪŋ / verb

1 to carry something with you • ***Bring** your dictionaries to class tomorrow.*

2 to carry something to someone • *Sit down and I'll **bring** a cup of tea for you.*

phrasal verbs

1 **bring back** to return with something • *We **brought back** some shells from the beach.*

2 **bring forward** to change the time or date of something so that it happens sooner • *Dad*

build

brought forward his holiday from September to July so we can all go away together.

3 **bring out** to produce • *That car was only **brought out** last month and it's already popular.*

4 **bring round** to persuade someone • *My brother wanted to keep a snake but Mum hates them and he couldn't **bring her round** to the idea.*

5 **bring up** to look after a child until he or she is an adult • *My aunt and uncle decided to **bring up** their children in the country so they left the city.*

broad / brɔ:d / adjective wide • *The river is **broad** where it meets the sea.*

broken / 'brəʊkən / adjective damaged, in pieces

bronze / brɒnz / noun a hard metal that used to be used to make weapons and helmets

bronze / brɒnz / adjective made of bronze • *This **bronze** sword is nearly 2,000 years old.*

broom / bru:m / noun a brush on a long stick that is used to sweep the floor

brother / 'brʌðə(r) / noun the male child of your mother and father

brush / brʌʃ / noun

1 an object with stiff hairs used for cleaning things

2 an object with fine hairs used for painting pictures

3 a flat object with a lot of hairs used for covering walls and doors with paint

brush / brʌʃ / verb to make something clean or tidy using a brush • *Don't forget to **brush** your teeth before you go to bed.*

bubble / 'bʌb(ə)l / noun the round shape of air trapped inside a liquid

bubble / 'bʌb(ə)l / verb to make bubbles • *The hot soup **bubbled** in the pan.*

buckle / 'bʌk(ə)l / noun a metal fastening on objects such as shoes, belts and bags

bud / bʌd / noun a tightly closed flower before it opens • *When the sun shines in spring, the **buds** begin to open.*

bug / bʌg / noun (informal) an insect

build / bɪld / verb to make a building or other structure

building

building / 'bɪldɪŋ / noun a structure with walls and a roof and sometimes several or many floors

bulldozer / 'bʊl,dəʊzə(r) / noun a machine that pushes a lot of earth or rocks at once • *The bulldozers moved the rocks off the road.*

bump into / 'bʌmp ,ɪntu / phrasal verb
1 to meet by chance • *We bumped into my aunt when we were at the mall.*
2 to hit or knock against something • *The car bumped into the wall and it fell down.*

bunch / bʌntʃ / noun a group of things together • *a bunch of flowers*

bungee jump / 'bʌndʒi ,dʒʌmp / noun a jump from a high bridge or tall building with an elastic rope tied to the leg

burger / 'bɜ:(r)gə(r) / noun small pieces of meat mixed with herbs, pressed into a flat round shape and eaten between two halves of a bread roll

burn / bɜ:(r)n / verb
1 to be on fire • *The house is burning. Please call the firemen.*
2 produce light / heat • *The candles are burning brightly and they look very pretty.*
3 to spoil food by heating for too long • *Oh no, I forgot about the cake and now it's burned.*
phrasal verb **burn down** to be damaged by fire • *The palace burned down and nothing was left.*

burst / bɜ:(r)st / verb to open or explode suddenly • *It was so warm that the buds on the trees began to burst open.*

bury / 'beri / verb to put into the ground and cover • *The pirates buried their gold on the island.*

bus / bʌs / noun a large road vehicle that lots of passengers can travel in at the same time

bush / buʃ / noun a plant with leaves and short branches like a small tree

business / 'bɪznəs / noun
1 the buying and selling of goods and services • *My father wants me to have a career in business but I don't find it interesting.*
2 a group of people or an organisation that produces something that other people buy • *My uncle owns a car repair business with ten mechanics.*

businessman / 'bɪznəsmən / noun a man who runs a business or works in business

call

bustling / 'bʌs(ə)lɪŋ / adjective busy, full of movement and activity • *The market place is bustling from early in the morning.*

busy / 'bɪzi / adjective doing a lot of things • *Ben is always busy after school because he plays lots of sports.*

butterfly / 'bʌtə(r),flaɪ / noun an insect with large colourful wings

button / 'bʌt(ə)n / noun small flat discs sewn onto clothes to hold parts together • *It's cold today so do up the buttons on your coat.*

buy / baɪ / verb to pay money for something and keep it • *Nina's gone to buy a new pen to use in school.*

buzz / bʌz / noun the sound made by the wings of a flying insect • *The loud buzz of the flies around the light was very annoying.*

Cc

cable / 'keɪb(ə)l / noun a very strong metal rope • *Cables are put around heavy objects then they are lifted by a crane.*

café / 'kæfeɪ / noun a place where you can sit down and buy drinks and snacks

cage / keɪdʒ / noun a container made of metal bars for keeping animals and birds in

cake / keɪk / noun a sweet food made by baking a mixture of flour, eggs, butter and sugar

calculator / 'kælkjuˌleɪtə(r) / noun a small piece of electronic equipment used to work out sums • *You can use a calculator in this maths test.*

call / kɔ:l / noun a spoken conversation by telephone or satellite • *Mum got a phone call from our aunt in America. call sign, the word that is used to show which spacecraft, plane or ship is calling The scientists heard the space station's call sign.*

call / kɔ:l / verb
1 to name somebody something • *Mum and Dad called our new baby sister Bella.*
2 to speak in a raised voice • *Nina called to her friend across the street and she came over to chat to us.*
phrasal verb **call out** to shout a comment or answer • *Please don't call out. Put your hand up to answer.*

Cc

calm

catch

Cc

calm / kɑ:m / adjective

1 (water) flat, without waves • *After the storm, the sea was **calm**.*

2 (a person) quiet and not anxious • *It's important to keep **calm** in a dangerous situation.*

calm / kɑ:m / verb to make someone or something still and quiet • *The nurse **calmed** the old lady by talking to her kindly.*

camel / 'kæm(ə)l / noun an animal that lives in the desert and can be used to carry heavy loads **camel train**, a line of camels carrying goods and people through the desert

camera / 'kæm(ə)rə / noun a small machine that takes photos

camp / kæmp / noun a place where people live in tents for a short time • *Mountain climbers often make a **camp** at the bottom of a mountain.*

can / kæn / verb to have the ability • *My cousin **can** run a mile in four minutes and thirty seconds.*

can / kæn / noun a metal container

cancel / 'kæns(ə)l / verb to stop an event or an arrangement • *The basketball match is **cancelled** because all the players are ill.*

candle / 'kænd(ə)l / noun a solid tube shape made of wax and string that burns and gives light

candlelight / 'kænd(ə)l,laɪt / noun the light from one or more candles

canoe / kə'nu: / noun a long boat for one or several people that is moved by paddling

captain / 'kæptɪn / noun

1 the leader of a team • *Lily is the **captain** of the basketball team.*

2 the person who leads on a ship, plane or in an army • *The **captain** told the sailors to put down the anchor.*

caption / 'kæpʃ(ə)n / noun words that give information about a picture or a photo • *The **caption** under this photo of a castle says where it is.*

captivity / kæp'tɪvəti / noun being kept in a cage or prison • *Some prisoners are kept in **captivity** for many years.*

capture / 'kæptʃə(r) / verb to catch and keep hold of something • *The pirates **captured** the ship and stole all the treasure.*

car / kɑ:(r) / noun a vehicle with four wheels that is powered by an engine

card / kɑ:(r)d / noun a picture with a greeting or message that you give or send to somebody on a special occasion • *Grandma sent me a pretty **card** on my birthday.*

careful / 'keə(r)f(ə)l / adjective thinking about what you do so that nothing bad happens • *Be **careful** when you pick up the baby and make sure you don't drop her!*

carefully / 'keə(r)f(ə)li / adverb in a careful way

carpenter / 'kɑ:(r)pɪntə(r) / noun a person who makes useful things from wood

carriage / 'kærɪdʒ / noun the part of a train that the passengers ride in

carrot / 'kærət / noun a long orange coloured vegetable that grows in the ground

carry / 'kæri / verb to hold something and take it from one place to another place • *The passenger picked up his bag and **carried** it onto the plane.*

phrasal verb **carry on** to continue • *You may **carry on** writing your stories for homework.*

cart / kɑ:(r)t / noun a small vehicle with two or four wheels that is pulled by an animal such as a donkey or a horse

carve / kɑ:(r)v / verb to cut a shape out of wood with a knife • *The craftsman **carved** a wooden spoon from the fallen branch.*

cascade / kæ'skeɪd / noun a stream of falling water • *The mountain river fell in **cascades** over the rocks.*

cascade / kæ'skeɪd / verb fall like a waterfall • *The river ran along the valley then **cascaded** straight down the cliff.*

castle / 'kɑ:s(ə)l / noun a very large building, usually made of stone, built in the past to keep people safe from attack

cat / kæt / noun an animal with soft fur and whiskers that catches mice and some people keep as a pet

catch / kætʃ / verb

1 to stop a falling object and hold it • *Fred **caught** the apple that dropped off the tree.*

caterpillar

2 to prevent an escape • *The police **caught** the thieves when they ran out of the bank.*

3 to get an illness or disease • *John **caught** a bad cold last winter.*

4 to take public transport • *We **caught** a bus to the station.*

5 to start to burn • *The firework fell on the roof of the house and it **caught** fire. **catch a glimpse**, to see something for a short time We **caught a glimpse** of the queen through the crowds. **catch someone's eye**, to get someone's attention by looking at them *Dad **caught** the waiter's eye and asked him to bring a jug of water.**

caterpillar / 'kætə(r)pɪlə(r) / noun a long insect without wings that crawls and eventually turns into a butterfly

cattle / 'kæt(ə)l / noun (plural) cows and bulls • *People have kept **cattle** for thousands of years.*

cause / kɔːz / noun reason • *The **cause** of the children's argument was a broken toy.*

cautious / 'kɔːʃəs / adjective having or using very great care • *My mum is a very **cautious** driver.*

cave / keɪv / noun an underground space made by nature • *We explored the deep **caves** in the mountains.*

CD / ,siː'diː / noun a compact disc that is used to store music and speech **CD player**, a machine for playing a CD on

celebrate / 'seləbreɪt / verb to do particular activities because of a special day or event • *We're going to **celebrate** Mum's birthday with a boat trip on the river.*

centimetre / 'sentɪmɪtə(r) / noun a measurement of 10 millimetres

century / 'sentʃəri / noun a period of 100 years

certain / 'sɜː(r)t(ə)n / adjective sure • *Are you **certain** that the bus hasn't gone yet?*

certainly / 'sɜː(r)t(ə)nli / adverb definitely true • *It is **certainly** a good idea to read as much as you can.*

certainty / 'sɜː(r)t(ə)nti / noun sureness • *There's no **certainty** that John will pass the exam.*

chair / tʃeə(r) / noun a piece of furniture for sitting on

challenge / 'tʃælɪndʒ / noun a difficult event or task, something that is not easy to do • *Walking to the North Pole is a big **challenge** for explorers.*

chauffeur

champion / 'tʃæmpiən / noun the winner of many important races or competitions • *My uncle is the **champion** chess player in our town.*

chance / tʃaːns / noun opportunity, a time when something can be done • *I wanted to finish my project today but I haven't had a **chance** to do it. **by chance**, by good luck and without proper organisation or planning *We had no map and we only found the village **by chance**.**

chandelier / ʃændə'liə(r) / noun a very large light made with lots of pieces of glass • *The palace was lit by many glittering **chandeliers**.*

change / tʃeɪndʒ / verb to make different • *I don't like my idea for my project so I'm going to **change** it. phrasal verb **change into** to become something different • *A tadpole **changes into** a frog.**

channel / 'tʃæn(ə)l / noun
1 a television station and its programmes • *The film we want to watch is on **Channel 5**.*
2 a narrow area of water between two pieces of land • *Some people have swum across the **channel** between England and France.*

chapter / 'tʃæptə(r) / noun a part of a book • *Harry read four **chapters** of his new book.*

character / 'kærɪktə(r) / noun a person in a story, play or film

chariot / 'tʃæriət / noun a strong cart with two wheels that is pulled by a horse and was often used in battles in the past

chart / tʃɑː(r)t / noun information shown in a table with lines and squares • *This **chart** shows how tall and how old the children are.*

chat / tʃæt / verb to talk in a friendly way with someone • *Grandad **chatted** to the man who was selling melons.*

chat / tʃæt / noun a friendly conversation • *Mum and Aunt Sue love to get together for a **chat**. **chat show**, a TV programme where well-known people are interviewed about themselves*

chauffeur / 'ʃəʊfə(r), ʃəʊ'fɜː(r) / noun a person whose job is to drive a wealthy or important individual around in their car **chauffeur-driven**, driven by a professional driver who often wears a uniform

Cc

cheap

cheap / tʃi:p / adjective not costing much money
• *Paper fans are **cheap** but silk fans are expensive.*

cheaper / 'tʃi:pə(r) / adjective costing less money than something else • *Paper fans are **cheaper** than silk fans.*

cheek / tʃi:k / noun the soft parts of the face on each side of the nose

cheeky / 'tʃi:ki / adjective behaving in a way that does not show respect, especially to an older or more important person • *Anna told our uncle that his hair needed cutting, which was very **cheeky**.*

cheer / tʃiə(r) / verb to shout to encourage someone or because they have done well • *Everyone **cheered** when Sam ran across the finishing line first.*

cheerful / 'tʃiə(r)f(ə)l / adjective happy, feeling good • *When Mum sings to herself, we know she's feeling **cheerful**.*

cheerfully / 'tʃiə(r)f(ə)li / adverb in a happy way

cheerfulness / 'tʃiə(r)f(ə)lnəs / noun the feeling of happiness • *Ben smiled when he got his exam results and his **cheerfulness** told us they were good.*

cheerio / 'tʃiəriəu / interjection (informal expression) goodbye

cheese / tʃi:z / noun a solid food made of milk • *Do you like **cheese** on the top of your pizza?*

chemistry / 'kemistri / noun a science

cheque / tʃek / noun a written payment • *Dad sold our old car and the buyer wrote him a **cheque**.*

chequered / 'tʃekə(r)d / adjective with a black and white square pattern on • *The **chequered** flag tells drivers when they have finished the race.*

chess / tʃes / noun a board game for two players
• *In the game of **chess**, each player has 16 pieces.*
chesspiece, one of the different shapes with special names that are used in a game of chess

chest / tʃest / noun
1 the front part of the upper body • *The old soldier wore a medal on his **chest**.*
2 a large box with a lid for keeping things in

chick / tʃik / noun a young bird

chicken / 'tʃɪkɪn / noun a hen, a farmyard bird that lays eggs that people eat

clay

chief / tʃi:f / noun the most important person in a group • *When the **chief** spoke, everyone listened.*

child / tʃaɪld / noun a young person

childhood / 'tʃaɪld,hud / noun the period of being a child

childish / 'tʃaɪldɪʃ / adjective right for a child
• *This book has lovely pictures but the story is too **childish** for Anna, now she's a teenager.*

children / 'tʃɪldrən / noun (plural) more than one child

chimney / 'tʃɪmni / noun the short, round pipe on the roof of a house or building where smoke from a fire can escape into the air

chip / tʃɪp / noun a long piece of potato cooked in oil, often eaten with a burger

chocolate / 'tʃɒklət / noun a sweet food eaten on its own • *a bar of **chocolate***

chocolate / 'tʃɒklət / adjective with chocolate flavour • ***chocolate** ice cream*

choir / kwəɪə(r) / noun a group of singers

choose / tʃu:z / verb
1 to decide which one you want from a number of things • *Mum **chose** a pretty scarf when we went to the market.*
2 to decide to do something • *You can **choose** to print your project if you like.*

chop / tʃɒp / verb to cut into small pieces with a knife (food) or an axe (wood)

chorus / 'kɔ:rəs / noun the verse of a song or poem that is repeated several times • *The **chorus** was easy to learn but the verses were harder.*

church / tʃɜ:(r)tʃ / noun a religious building

circle / 'sɜ:(r)k(ə)l / noun a round shape

city / 'sɪti / noun a place where many people live, with many buildings, streets and traffic

class / klɑ:s / noun a group of school students who have lessons together • *Nina and Anna are in the same **class** for English.*

claw / klɔ: / noun the hard, sharp parts at the end of a bird's foot or an animal's paw

clay / kleɪ / noun very thick, heavy soil that can be shaped into pots, bowls and plates then baked hard

clean

clean / kli:n / verb to take away dirt by washing, brushing or sweeping

clean / kli:n / adjective without any dirt

cleanliness / 'klenlinəs / noun the state of being clean • **Cleanliness** is very important when somebody is ill or hurt.

clear / klɪə(r) / adjective

1 can be seen through • Windows usually have **clear** glass in them.

2 evident, obvious • It's **clear** from your good marks that you work hard.

3 plain and easy to follow • Give **clear** instructions when you write a recipe.

4 neat and easy to read • Make your writing **clear** in your exam.

clearing / 'klɪərɪŋ / noun a small open space between trees in a forest • Grass grew in the **clearing** where the sunlight fell.

clearly / 'klɪə(r)li / adverb in a way that is easy to understand • The teacher said the word **clearly** and the students wrote it down.

clever / 'kleɪvə(r) / adjective very good at thinking • Joe is **clever** and he always gets good marks.

click / klɪk / noun the small sound made when a switch is pushed • There was a **click** and at once the light came on.

cliff / klɪf / noun the very steep side of a high area of land • At the north end of the island the **cliffs** are 200 metres high.

climate / 'klaɪmət / noun the weather and temperature in a region or area • You can't grow bananas in England because the **climate** is too cold.

climb / klaɪm / verb

1 to take steps upwards • Ben **climbed** the stairs to the classroom.

2 to use hands and feet to go up something • The boys **climbed** the trees in the forest.

climber / 'klaɪmə(r) / noun a person who climbs hills and mountains • **Climbers** often use ropes to help them get to the top.

cloak / kləʊk / noun a large piece of cloth worn around the shoulders and covering most of the body

coffee

clock / klɒk / noun an object that tells the time **o'clock**, for saying the hour • It's two **o'clock**.

close / kləʊz / verb to shut • **Close** the door, please, it's cold.

close / kləʊs / adverb near • Your mouth is **close** to your nose. **close up**, from only a very short distance away When I looked at the butterfly **close up**, I saw that its wings had a pattern on them.

closed / kləʊzd / adjective shut, not open • The shop is **closed** now so come back tomorrow.

cloth / klɒθ / noun material that is made from woven threads, often cotton or wool

clothes / kləʊðz / noun (plural) things you wear to cover your body

cloud / klaʊd / noun the white shapes in the sky made of tiny drops of water

cloudy / 'klaʊdi / adjective the weather when there are lots of clouds in the sky

clove / kləʊv / noun the small part that makes up a garlic vegetable

clown / klaʊn / noun a performer who does funny things to make people laugh

club / klʌb / noun a group of people who do an activity together • Lots of students go to the chess **club** every week.

cluck / klʌk / noun the sound a chicken makes

clumsy / 'klʌmzi / adjective careless and without skill • The baby grabbed the cup with **clumsy** movements and dropped it.

coach / kəʊtʃ / noun a person who trains people in sports • Our basketball **coach** helps us and we play well now.

coast / kəʊst / noun the edge of the land next to the sea • Some **coasts** are rocky and some are sandy.

coastal / 'kəʊst(ə)l / adjective of or to do with the coasts • Many of the **coastal** villages have restaurants and sandy beaches.

coat / kəʊt / noun a thick piece of clothing with sleeves that you wear over other clothes

coffee / 'kɒfi / noun a hot drink made from hard, brown beans

Cc

coil

coil / kɔɪl / verb to turn something long and thin round and round in circles • *You can **coil** a rope. A snake **coils** itself.*

Cc

cold / kəʊld / adjective how you feel in winter • *It's snowing and you will get **cold** if you don't wear your coat.*

collar / 'kɒlə(r) / noun the part of a coat or shirt that goes around the neck

collect / kə'lekt / verb to save and keep in one place • *Grandpa **collects** coins from all over the world.*

collection / kə'leɪʃ(ə)n / noun a group of objects that someone has put together because they are special or the same • *Anna has a **collection** of dolls from around the world.*

colour / 'kʌlə(r) / noun red, blue, green, etc.

colourful / 'kʌlə(r)f(ə)l / adjective having lots of different colours

column / 'kɒləm / noun a tall support • *Part of the roof is held up by **columns**.*

come / kʌm / verb

1 to move towards a place • ***Come** here, please.*

2 to get to a place • *My sister **came** home early because she was ill.*

phrasal verbs

1 **come back** to get to a place again where you were before • *Our teacher went out then she **came back** with our books.*

2 **come in** to move from outside into a place • *Our classroom is on the ground floor and visitors often **come in**.*

3 **come round** to visit someone at their house • *Ben **came round** after school today and we started our project.*

comfortable / 'kʌmfəb(ə)l / adjective nice to use, making you feel good • *This armchair is very **comfortable**.*

comical / 'kɒmɪk(ə)l / adjective funny • *The enormous clown looked **comical** in his tiny car.*

command / kə'mɑːnd / verb to tell someone to do something • *The captain **commanded** the soldiers to attack.*

commander / kə'mɑːndə(r) / noun the leader of an army or space journey

concentrate

commentator / 'kɒmənˌteɪtə(r) / noun a person who describes to other people what is happening in an event, usually on radio or television • *The **commentator** talked excitedly when the goal was scored.*

commute / kə'mjuːt / verb to travel some distance to work every day by public transport or car • *Dad **commutes** to London every day by train.*

commuter / kə'mjuːtə(r) / noun a person who commutes • *Most **commuters** travel to work in the morning and go home in the evening.*

compass / 'kʌmpəs / noun an instrument that tells you the direction of north

compete / kəm'piːt / verb to try to win against another person or people • *Sam **competed** in the chess match.*

competition / ,kɒmpə'tɪʃ(ə)n / noun an event when individuals or teams compete to find the winner • *Sports **competitions** are usually very exciting.*

competitor / kəm'petɪtə(r) / noun a person who takes part in a competition

complain / kəm'pleɪn / verb to speak crossly when something is bad or wrong • *Mum **complained** because I didn't tidy my room.*

complete / kəm'pliːt / adjective finished • *Hurrah! Our project is **complete** at last.*

completely / kəm'pliːtli / adverb totally, very • *The glass vase fell on the floor and was **completely** smashed.*

complex / 'kɒmpleks / noun a group of several buildings that are used for the same activity • *The new shopping **complex** in the city centre has just opened.*

complicated / 'kɒmplɪˌkeɪtɪd / adjective with a lot of detail and not easy to follow • *This pattern is too **complicated** to copy.*

computer / kəm'pjʊːtə(r) / noun an electronic machine that you can use to store and produce information and connect to the internet

concentrate / 'kɒns(ə)ntreɪt / verb to think hard about something without stopping • *If you don't **concentrate** when you do your homework, you will make mistakes.*

concentration

concentration / ˌkɒns(ə)n'treɪʃ(ə)n / noun
thinking hard without stopping • *It will help your concentration if you don't have the TV on while you do your homework.*

concerned / kən'sɜ:(r)nd / adjective worried
• *Dad is concerned about our uncle who had an accident yesterday.*

concert / 'kɒnsə(r)t / noun a musical performance

concrete / 'kɒŋkri:t / noun a very hard material for building • *Our house has walls that are made of concrete.*

condition / kən'dɪʃ(ə)n / noun the quality of something, what it is like • *The condition of the house was bad as it had broken windows and no doors.*

conditions / kən'dɪʃ(ə)nz / noun (plural) the environment or situation in which something happens • *It's sunny and the sea is calm so these are good conditions for taking a boat trip.*

condor / 'kɒndɔ:(r) / noun a large American bird

confidence / 'kɒnfɪd(ə)ns / noun the feeling that you can do something well • *Joe lost his confidence in playing sport when he broke his leg.*

confident / 'kɒnfɪd(ə)nt / adjective certain you can do something well • *Ben did some extra revision and now he feels confident about his exam.*

confidently / 'kɒnfɪdəntli / adverb in a sure and certain way • *Sam knew the right answer so he replied to his teacher confidently.*

confusion / kən'fju:ʒ(ə)n / noun a feeling that you do not understand or cannot decide what to do • *There was confusion at the airport when the announcer said all flights were cancelled.*

congratulation / kənˌgrætʃu'leɪʃ(ə)n / noun a good wish on a special occasion • *Congratulations on passing your driving test. My brother received many congratulations when he got married.*

connect / kə'nekt / verb to join • *Ben heard the phone line connect, then he heard his dad say "Hello".*

constellation / ˌkɒnstə'leɪʃ(ə)n / noun a group of stars that are named after the pattern or shape they form • *A well-known constellation is The Plough.*

cool

construct / kən'strʌkt / verb to build or make something • *The new bridge was constructed from metal.*

construction / kən'strʌkʃ(ə)n / noun something that is built • *The Pyramids of Giza are ancient constructions.*

contact / 'kɒntækt / verb to speak to someone or send them a letter, message or email • *You can contact me by phone or I can give you my email address.*

contain / kən'teɪn / verb to have something inside • *This bucket contains clean water.*

container / kən'teɪnə(r) / noun an object that is used for putting things in, e.g. a box or a bottle

continual / kən'tɪnjuəl / adjective happening often again and again • *The people who live near the airport say that the noise of planes is continual.*

continuous / kən'tɪnjuəs / adjective unbroken, happening without stopping • *This patient needs a continuous supply of oxygen.*

continuously / kən'tɪnjuəsli / adverb without stopping • *The engineers worked continuously for two days to repair the broken bridge.*

control / kən'trəʊl / noun a part of a machine that you use to make it do actions • *The astronaut used the controls to land the spaceship.*

controversial / ˌkɒntrə'vɜ:(r)ʃ(ə)l / adjective causing a lot of discussion and disagreement • *The new bridge is very controversial because a lot of people think it's ugly but other people really like it.*

conversation / ˌkɒnvə(r)'seɪʃ(ə)n / noun speaking between two or more people • *In the café, two ladies were having a conversation about parrots.*

convince / kən'vɪns / verb to make someone certain of something • *Ben convinced Mum that he had done his homework by showing her his finished project.*

coo / ku: / noun the sound made by a pigeon

cook / kuk / verb to get food ready for eating by heating it

cool / ku:l / verb to let something get cold

cool / ku:l / adjective not at all warm • *It's cool today so wear your jacket.*

Cc

copy

copy / 'kɒpi / verb to produce or make another one the same • You can **copy** a page from this website onto your own computer. Please **copy** your essay onto paper and put it in your folder.

Cc

copy / 'kɒpi / noun something that is the same as something else • This picture is a **copy** of the one that is in the Museum of Art.

corn / kɔ:(r)n / noun a grass with seeds that people make flour from

cornea / 'kɔ:(r)niə / noun part of the eye

corner / 'kɔ:(r)nə(r) / noun

1 the place where two walls come together • the **corner** of the room

2 the place where two edges meet • the **corner** of the page

correct / kə'rekt / adjective right • You have nine **correct** answers and only one is wrong.

correction / kə'rekʃ(ə)n / noun a change that makes something right or solves a problem • Ben made **corrections** to his writing so he got a better mark.

cosmonaut / 'kɒzmə,nɔ:t / noun the Russian word for a space traveller • Yuri Gagarin was the first **cosmonaut** in space.

cost / kɒst / noun the amount you have to pay for something • The **cost** of these jeans is \$40.00.

costume / 'kɒstju:m / noun the clothes an actor wears on stage

council / 'kauns(ə)l / noun a group of people who take decisions about a city, town or neighbourhood • We should write to the **council** about all the rubbish in our streets.

count / kaunt / verb

1 to say numbers in order • My little cousin can **count** to ten.

2 to number things one by one to find out how many there are • Let's **count** the sweets in the bag then share them out.

country / 'kʌntri / noun

1 the land away from towns and cities •

Grandma lives in the **country** and there are fields all round her house.

2 the land belonging to a nation of people • I live in England. Which **country** do you live in?

crash

countryside / 'kʌntri,said / noun the land away from the towns and cities • Many people like to go to the **countryside** at the weekend.

couple / 'kʌp(ə)l / noun two • There was only a **couple** of passengers on the train.

courage / 'kʌrɪdʒ / noun bravery • Ben showed true **courage** when he jumped into the river to save his sister.

courageous / kə'reɪdʒəs / adjective brave • Space travel is dangerous and astronauts are **courageous** people.

course / kɔ:(r)s / noun a series of lessons in a particular subject • My cousin has finished his engineering **course** and now he's looking for work.

courtyard / 'kɔ:(r)tjɑ:(r)d / noun an area between buildings with walls on four sides • We played basketball in the **courtyard** of our apartment blocks.

cousin / 'kʌz(ə)n / noun the son or daughter of your aunt and uncle • We usually play with our **cousins** at the weekend.

cover / 'kʌvə(r) / noun

1 the front of something • the **cover** of a book

2 something that is placed on top of an object • A pretty blue **cover** was on the bed.

cover / 'kʌvə(r) / verb to put something on top of another thing • Mum **covered** the fruit with a cloth because of the insects.

cow / kaʊ / noun a farm animal that is kept for its milk

crab / kræb / noun a roundish sea creature with a hard shell that moves on legs and has sharp claws

crack / kræk / verb to break without complete separation of the parts • The plate **cracked** when Sam dropped it but it didn't break apart. **crack open**, to crack and then open up The egg **cracked open** and the chick appeared.

craft / kra:ft / noun the making of things by hand • A carpenter's **craft** is making things with wood.

crane / kreɪn / noun a tall machine for lifting heavy objects • The **crane** lifted the bricks to the top of the building.

crash / kræʃ / verb to hit strongly • The box fell off the lorry and **crashed** onto the road.

crater

crater / 'kreɪtə(r) / noun

1 the opening at the top of a volcano ♦ *The sides of a **crater** are often steep.*

2 the bowl-shaped hole in the ground made by an explosion ♦ *The firework went off and left a small **crater** in the ground.*

crawl / kɹɔ:l / verb

1 (a person) to move slowly on hands and knees

2 (creatures) to move slowly on four or more arms and legs

crayon / 'kreɪən / noun a coloured pencil used for colouring on paper

crazy / 'kreɪzi / adjective strange and very silly
♦ *Travelling to the moon by hot-air balloon is a **crazy** idea.*

create / kri'eɪt / verb to make something new exist ♦ *An artist **created** this sculpture from metal.*

creation / kri'eɪʃ(ə)n / noun something that is made using skill and ideas ♦ *My cousin's wedding dress was a wonderful **creation**.*

creature / 'kri:tʃə(r) / noun a living thing ♦ *Many different **creatures** live in the rainforest.*

credible / 'kredəb(ə)l / adjective can be believed
♦ *The idea that Ben will go to America is very **credible** because he likes travelling.*

crescent / 'krez(ə)nt / noun a curved shape like a new moon

crime / kraɪm / noun a very bad act that the police catch people for doing ♦ *The men stole a car and that was a **crime**.*

crimson / 'krɪmz(ə)n / adjective a dark red colour

crisis / 'kraɪsɪs / noun a very big problem ♦ *Floods can create a huge **crisis** very quickly.*

crisp / kɹɪsp / adjective stiff ♦ *Dad always wears a blue shirt with a **crisp** white collar when he's working.*

croak / kɹəʊk / verb to make a rough sound like a frog ♦ *When Dad had a sore throat he couldn't speak – he **croaked**!*

crockery / 'krɒkəri / noun plates, cups, saucers and bowls made of china or pottery

crocodile / 'krɒkədail / noun a large sea and river creature with short legs, a long tail and a long mouth with sharp teeth

custom

crop / kɹɒp / noun the plants and fruits that farmers grow ♦ *The **crop** in this field is potatoes.*

cross / kɹɒs / adjective not pleased, a little angry

cross / kɹɒs / verb to go across ♦ *You must **cross** the road carefully.*

cross / kɹɒs / noun (in football) the direction of a ball that travels across the pitch

crossroads / 'kɹɒs,ɹəʊdz / noun (plural) the place where two roads cross each other

crown / kraʊn / noun the headdress worn by kings and queens

cruel / 'kru:əl / adjective very unkind and hurtful

cruise / kru:z / verb to move slowly and smoothly ♦ *The big ship **cruised** across the calm bay.*

crumpled / 'kɹʌmp(ə)ld / adjective squashed up into a small shape

crush / kɹʌʃ / verb to squash hard and break into small lumps or pieces ♦ *Machines are used to **crush** stones for making roads.*

cry / krai / verb

1 to have tears coming from your eyes because of feeling sad ♦ *We all **cried** at the end of the film because the hero died.*

2 to call out in a loud voice ♦ *The clown asked, "Where is my hat?" "It's on your head!" the children **cried**.*

cube / kju:b / noun a shape like a box with six equal faces

culture / 'kʌltʃə(r) / noun customs, habits, art and language of a nation or people

cup / kʌp / noun a container for drinking from

cupboard / 'kʌbə(r)d / noun a piece of furniture with shelves inside and doors on the front for keeping things in

cure / kjuə(r) / verb to make better ♦ *The tablet Mum gave me **cured** my headache.*

curtain / 'kɜ:(r)t(ə)n / noun a piece of cloth that is hung across a window to keep out light

cushion / 'kuʃ(ə)n / noun a soft object that is put on chairs to make them comfortable

custom / 'kʌstəm / noun something that people do in a certain way ♦ *In England it is a **custom** to put candles on a birthday cake.*

Cc

cut

cut / kʌt / verb to divide something using scissors or a knife • Mum **cut** the cake and we all had a piece.

phrasal verb **cut out** to cut a shape or piece from something else • Draw a circle then **cut it out**.

Dd

cute / kjʊt / adjective pretty, attractive • Baby animals always look **cute**.

cutlery / 'kʌtləri / noun knives, forks and spoons

cycle / 'saɪk(ə)l / verb to travel by bike

cycle lane / 'saɪk(ə)l ,leɪn / noun a bike/cycle lane, a narrow track, often as part of a large road, that is only for people riding bicycles to use • The **cycle lane** is safer because there are no cars.

cycling / 'saɪklɪŋ / noun the activity of travelling by bike

cylinder / 'sɪlɪndə(r) / noun a round, hollow object shaped like a tube

Dd

damage / 'dæmɪdʒ / verb harm • Eating too much can **damage** your health. The car was badly **damaged** in the accident.

damage / 'dæmɪdʒ / noun breaking and destroying of things • The storm caused a lot of **damage**.

dance / dɑːns / noun to move with rhythm to music often with particular movements

dancer / 'dɑːnsə(r) / noun a person who dances

danger / 'deɪndʒə(r) / noun a time or situation when something bad might happen • There is **danger** in climbing a mountain during a blizzard. When the ship sank, the passengers were in **danger** of drowning.

dangerous / 'deɪndʒərəs / adjective likely to harm or hurt • Lions are **dangerous** wild animals.

daring / 'deərɪŋ / adjective brave • It was very **daring** to run after the thief and catch him.

dark / dɑː(r)k / adjective without any light • It is **dark** outside in the middle of the night.

darkness / 'dɑː(r)knəs / noun the dark at night or in a place with no lights • The **darkness** in the cave was scary.

delighted

dart / dɑː(r)t / verb to move very suddenly and quickly • The mouse **darted** across the floor and Mum screamed.

date / deɪt / noun

1 a particular day in the year shown by the number and month, e.g. 25th May

2 a fruit that grows on a tree in hot countries

date palm / 'deɪt ,pɑːm / noun the kind of tree that dates grow on

daughter / 'dɔːtə(r) / noun the girl child of a mother and father

dawn / dɔːn / noun the time when the sun first shines light in the sky

day / deɪ / noun a period of 24 hours

daylight / 'deɪlaɪt / noun light given by the sun during the daytime

dead / ded / adjective no longer alive • This plant is **dead** because we forgot to water it.

decide / dɪ'saɪd / verb to make a choice about something • Have you **decided** to go to the seaside or the mountains for your holiday?

decision / dɪ'sɪʒ(ə)n / noun the choice someone makes about something • I think your **decision** to study Chinese is a good one.

deep / diːp / adjective going down a long way • This pool is **deep**. It's 10 metres to the bottom.

defiance / dɪ'faɪəns / noun the act of not obeying • The boy's **defiance** made his teacher angry.

definite / 'def(ə)nət / adjective

1 clearly decided and particular • The 23rd is the **definite** date of our prize day.

2 certain • I'm completely **definite** about my choice of university.

definitely / 'def(ə)nətli / adverb certainly • I'm **definitely** going to finish my project today.

deliberate / dɪ'lib(ə)rət / adjective on purpose, meant to happen • The large stone under the broken window showed that the damage was **deliberate**.

delicate / 'delɪkət / adjective fine, easily broken or damaged • A butterfly's wings are **delicate**.

delighted / dɪ'laɪtɪd / adjective very pleased • Mum and Dad were **delighted** when I passed my piano exam.

den

den / den / noun the place where a wild animal lives • *Wolves have dens in forests.*

dentist / 'dentist / noun a person who you go to see for treatment on your teeth

depressed / di'prest / adjective very sad, often for a long time • *Anna felt very depressed when her best friend moved away.*

descend / di'send / verb to go down • *You can descend the mountain in a special train.*

descendant / di'sendənt / noun a person who is born into a family at a later time • *The descendants of the old king left the country and travelled across the sea.*

describe / di'skraib / verb give details about something in order to explain what it is like • *I'll describe New York to you then you'll understand why I want to go back!*

description / di'skripʃ(ə)n / noun a statement giving details about something • *The police produced a description of the man they were looking for.*

desert / 'dezə(r)t / noun a large area of land that has almost no rain and few plants

deserve / di'zɜ:(r)v / verb to have done something well so that a reward is the right thing • *Ben deserves his prize because he has worked hard all year.*

design / di'zain / verb to draw a plan, a pattern or a picture of an object before making it • *For our homework we had to design a hotel.*

design / di'zain / noun

1 a pattern • *I like this spotty design.*

2 a drawing to show how something will look • *The design for the new racing car is completely secret.*

designer / di'zainə(r) / noun a person who draws designs for objects such as clothes and cars

desk / desk / noun a table in a classroom, office or study where you can sit and do your work

despair / di'speə(r) / noun the feeling that everything is bad and nothing can change it • *When the people saw their flooded houses, they were in despair.*

despair / di'speə(r) / verb to feel that everything is bad • *Don't despair if you don't pass the test because you can take it again.*

die

desperate / 'desp(ə)rət / adjective

1 willing to do anything because the situation is so bad • *The desperate man jumped from the window to escape the burning house.*

2 fearful and upset because of a bad situation • *Ben's voice was desperate when he phoned the firefighters.*

desperately / 'desp(ə)rətli / adverb urgently and anxiously because of a bad situation

destination / ,desti'neɪʃ(ə)n / noun the place someone or something is travelling to • *We've visited Rome and our next destination is Paris.*

destroy / di'strɔɪ / verb to damage something so badly that it cannot be used • *The house was destroyed by fire.*

detail / 'di:teɪl / noun a small fact or piece of information about something • *Ben described the details of the thief's appearance. in detail, giving all the facts and information You must explain how the machine works in detail.*

detect / di'tekt / verb find, notice, see • *We entered the house but could not detect any sign that anyone was there.*

detective / di'tektɪv / noun a policeman who solves crimes

determined / di'tɜ:(r)mɪnd / adjective very sure about wanting to do something • *Sue is determined to study to be a doctor.*

devastate / 'devə,steɪt / verb to damage a lot • *The town was devastated by the storm.*

devastated / 'devə,steɪtɪd / adjective feeling shocked and upset • *My uncle looked devastated when he realised that his new car had been stolen.*

diagram / 'daɪəgræm / noun a simple drawing of an object to show how it is made or how it works • *This diagram shows how a turbine turns and helps to make electricity.*

dial / 'daɪəl / noun a round control on a piece of equipment that can be turned to make it work • *Turn the dial on the washing machine to On and it will start.*

diary / 'daɪəri / noun a book in which a person writes what they have done each day • *We can learn a lot of history from old diaries.*

die / daɪ / verb to stop being alive

Dd

diet

diet / 'daɪət / noun what a person or animal eats
• A **diet** of sweets, chocolate and fizzy drinks is very bad for you.

difference / 'dɪfrəns / noun something that makes one person or thing not the same as another • The **difference** between the twins is the colour of their hair.

Dd

different / 'dɪfrənt / adjective not the same as something or someone else • Red and blue are **different** colours.

difficult / 'dɪfɪk(ə)l / adjective hard, not easy • It is **difficult** to learn two languages at the same time.

digger / 'dɪɡə(r) / noun a machine that digs • **Diggers** are used when roads are made.

digital / 'dɪdʒɪt(ə)l / adjective able to store information such as sound or pictures as numbers or electronic signals a **digital camera**, a piece of equipment that takes photos using a digital process

dim / dɪm / adjective only a little light • It was **dim** in the room because there was only a small window.

dinner / 'dɪnə(r) / noun a meal eaten in the evening

dinosaur / 'daɪnə,sɔ:(r) / noun a creature that existed millions of years ago on earth and was like a giant lizard

dip / dɪp / verb to put something into a liquid • **Dip** your toe in the pool and find out if the water is cold.

direction / dɪ'rekʃ(ə)n / noun the place that someone or something faces, moves or points towards • Can you tell me which **direction** the station is in, please?

dirty / 'dɜ:(r)ti / adjective covered in dirt • My little brother's muddy boots made the floor **dirty** so Mum cleaned it.

disappear / ,dɪsə'pɪə(r) / verb to go from sight • The lion **disappeared** into the jungle.

disappoint / ,dɪsə'pɔɪnt / verb to upset someone by not doing something they hoped for or expected • Freddy **disappointed** his parents when he failed his exam.

disappointed / ,dɪsə'pɔɪntɪd / adjective the feeling when you don't get something you

disposable

hoped for or expected • We were **disappointed** when our class visit to the museum was cancelled.

disappointment / ,dɪsə'pɔɪntmənt / noun the feeling of being disappointed

disaster / dɪ'zɑ:stə(r) / noun very bad event • A flood is a terrible **disaster** for people who live near the river.

disc / disk / noun a round flat object that can be used to store sound or pictures • My photos are all on the **disc** in this plastic box.

discourage / dɪs'kʌrɪdʒ / verb to say or do things to persuade someone not to do something • Ben **discouraged** his friend from watching TV by suggesting a game of football.

discover / dɪ'skʌvə(r) / verb
1 to find out facts • A long time ago people **discovered** that the earth is round.
2 to find a place • Columbus **discovered** America.

discovery / dɪ'skʌv(ə)ri / noun a fact or thing that is found or found out

discuss / dɪ'skʌs / verb to talk about something with one or more people

discussion / dɪ'skʌʃ(ə)n / noun the act of talking about something • During the programme there was a lively **discussion** about health.

disease / dɪ'zi:z / noun a type of illness • Some childhood **diseases** give you spots on your skin.

disgrace / dɪs'greɪs / noun the state of not being liked or looked up to by anyone • The family of the thief suffered **disgrace** when he went to prison. **in disgrace**, being badly thought of Sam is **in disgrace** because he broke Dad's camera.

disguise / dɪs'gaɪz / noun clothing and objects worn by a person to make him or her look different • Nina's **disguise** was a blond wig, a pair of glasses, an enormous hat and a long coat.

dish / dɪʃ / noun a large plate for serving food on

display / dɪ'spleɪ / noun a show of something • We all enjoyed watching the gymnastics **display** by students at the sports college.

disposable / dɪ'spəʊzəb(ə)l / adjective for using then throwing away • Cleanliness is very important in hospitals so doctors use **disposable** gloves once only.

distance

distance / 'distəns / noun the measurement between two points • *The **distance** from London to Cairo is about 3,500 kilometres.*

distant / 'dɪstənt / adjective a long way away • *We could see **distant** mountains on the other side of the huge lake.*

dive / daɪv / verb to go head first into water • *Penguins **dive** into the ocean and catch fish.*

divisible / dɪ'vɪzəb(ə)l / adjective can be divided • *Four is **divisible** by two.*

do / duː / verb to carry out an action • *I'm **doing** a drawing of my cat.*

doctor / 'dɒktə(r) / noun a person who works in a hospital with sick people or who you go to see when you are ill

dodge / dɒdʒ / verb to move quickly and suddenly around an object or person that is in the way • *The thief **dodged** around the policeman and ran away.*

dog / dɒg / noun an animal that is kept as a pet or for hunting and helping people to do tasks

doll / dɒl / noun a toy that looks like a girl

dolphin / 'dɒlfɪn / noun a mammal that lives in the sea in groups and which often leaps out of the water

door / dɔː(r) / noun the tall rectangular piece of wood or metal at the entrance to a room that can be opened or closed

doorway / 'dɔː(r)weɪ / noun the space at the entrance to a room when the door is open

down / daʊn / preposition to a place below • *Let's go **down** the hill to the river.*

downhill / ˌdaʊn'hɪl / adverb in a direction going down the hill • *It's easy to cycle **downhill**.*

drag / dræg / verb to pull an object over a surface • *The sailors **dragged** the boat across the sand and into the sea.*

dragon / 'dræɡən / noun an imaginary creature that can fly and breathes fire • *People used to believe that **dragons** were real animals.*

dragonfly / 'dræɡən,flaɪ / noun a kind of insect with two pairs of wings that lives around ponds and rivers

dry

drain / dreɪn / noun the pipe that takes dirty water away from a building and into the ground • ***Drains** sometimes smell terrible so they must be cleaned often.*

drama / 'drɑːmə / noun a play or a story that actors tell

draw / drɔː / verb to make a picture using a pencil

dream / driːm / noun the pictures and events you see when you are asleep

dreadful / 'dredf(ə)l / adjective very unpleasant / awful • *We had a **dreadful** holiday because it rained every day!*

dress / dres / noun a piece of clothing for a girl or a woman that covers the body and part of the arms and legs

dribble / 'drɪb(ə)l / verb (in football) to run kicking the ball gently and keeping it near to the feet

drift / drɪft / verb to float slowly in the air or water • *Smoke from the forest fire **drifted** across the valley.*

drink / drɪŋk / verb to take liquid into your body through your mouth

drive / draɪv / verb to make a vehicle go • *My uncle **drives** a taxi.*

driver / 'draɪvə(r) / noun a person who drives

droop / druːp / verb to bend downwards • *Ben was **drooping** with tiredness by the time they finished the 50 kilometre expedition.*

drop / drɒp / verb to let fall to the ground • *Don't **drop** that glass!*

drop / drɒp / noun a small amount of liquid

droplet / 'drɒplət / noun a very small amount of liquid

drown / draʊn / verb to die in water • *The ship broke when it hit the rocks and many sailors **drowned** in the sea.*

drum / drʌm / noun a round musical instrument that is hit to make a sound

dry / draɪ / adjective having no wetness • *A desert is a very **dry** place.*

dry / draɪ / verb to take the water from something • *The hot sun **dried** the washing quickly.*

Dd

duck

duck / ɒk / noun a bird that lives near rivers and lakes and swims on the water

duckling / ˈdʌklɪŋ / noun a young duck

duke / dju:k / noun a man who has a high position, just below a prince

dull / dʌl / adjective

1 not bright • *The sky was grey and **dull** so we didn't go to the beach.*

2 boring • *My cousin told such a **dull** story that Dad fell asleep!*

during / ˈdʒʊərɪŋ / preposition throughout the time of • ***During** the lesson the children worked hard.*

dusty / ˈdʌsti / adjective covered with fine dirt • *The car was **dusty** after it had travelled through the desert.*

duty / ˈdʒu:ti / noun a task that must be done as part of a person's job or position • *One of the guard's **duties** was to lock the door every night.*

dye / daɪ / noun a liquid that is used to colour cloth • *In a factory, many metres of cloth are put into a huge bowl of **dye** at one time. **hand-dyed**, coloured by a person putting different dyes on the cloth **Hand-dyed** cloth is often expensive because every piece is different.*

Ee

each / i:tʃ / adjective every one of two or more persons or things • ***Each** student in this class will be given a revision book.*

each / i:tʃ / pronoun every one • *These cakes are 75 pence **each**.*

each other / ˌi:tʃ ˈʌðə(r) / pronoun

1 the other one *The two boys looked at **each other**.*

2 each of the other people or things in a group *When the accident happened, several cars crashed into **each other**.*

eagle / ˈi:g(ə)l / noun a large bird that catches other birds and small animals

ear / ɪə(r) / noun the flap of skin on the side of your head where you hear sound

early / ˈɜ:(r)li / adjective near the beginning of a period of time • *In the **early** morning, the streets are quiet.*

egg

early / ˈɜ:(r)li / adverb before other things • *Ben got up **early** to revise before the exam.*

earn / ɜ:(r)n / verb to get money by working • *If you get a good job you will **earn** a lot of money.*

earphones / ˈɪə(r)fəʊnz / noun (plural) a small piece of equipment you can put in your ears to hear sounds from a CD, radio or music player

earring / ˈɪərɪŋ / noun a piece of jewellery worn on the ear

earth / ɜ:(r)θ / noun the planet we live on

easily / ˈi:zɪli / adverb without difficulty or without much effort

east / i:st / noun the direction where the sun comes up

easy / ˈi:zi / adjective not difficult or not needing much effort or work • *It was **easy** to find the mountain path but it wasn't **easy** to climb it!*

eat / i:t / verb to take food into your body through your mouth

edge / edʒ / noun the place where something ends • *The pencil fell off the **edge** of the desk.*

editor / ˈeditə(r) / noun the person who decides what goes in a newspaper or magazine and where it appears • *The **editor** decided that the story about the fire wasn't very interesting so he put it on page 6.*

educate / ˈedʒukeɪt / verb to teach • *Primary schools **educate** children until they are 11 or 12. My dad was **educated** in America.*

education / ˌedʒuˈkeɪʃ(ə)n / noun the activity of teaching people in schools and universities, etc. • ***Education** will help you all your life.*

eel / i:l / noun a long thin fish

effect / ɪˈfekt / noun the result of an action • *One **effect** of the storm was many fallen trees. (to) **have an effect**, to create a change The teacher's wise words **had an effect** on the class and they worked harder. **special effect**, when props and cameras are used to film something that is not real and which could not happen The **special effects** in the film were amazing! The dragon picked up the castle and ate it!*

egg / eg / noun the round shape made by a bird that a chick comes from

elbow

elbow / 'elbəʊ / noun the bony part in the middle of your arm • *Please don't sit with your elbows on the table.* **elbow pad**, a piece of thick material that is worn on the elbow to protect it *Ben put on his elbow pads before he went skateboarding.*

electric / ɪ'lektrɪk / adjective working by electricity • *Don't leave the electric lights on when the classroom is empty.*

electrical / ɪ'lektrɪk(ə)l / adjective of or to do with electricity • *My uncle is an electrical engineer.*

electricity / ɪ'lek'trɪsəti / noun the power that people use to work lights and machines • *When the electricity stops, the lights go off.*

electrifying / ɪ'lektrɪfaɪŋ / adjective very exciting and amazing • *The president's speech was electrifying and at the end everyone cheered and clapped for ages.*

elegance / 'elɪɡəns / noun beauty and gracefulness • *The people loved the queen for her elegance and kindness.*

elegant / 'elɪɡənt / adjective graceful and beautiful • *This ancient Chinese vase is both elegant and valuable.*

elephant / 'elɪfənt / noun a very large African and Asian animal which has a long trunk and large ears

embarrass / ɪm'bærəs / verb to make someone feel silly, nervous or awkward in front of other people • *My dad embarrassed my brother by telling everyone how clever he is.*

emperor / 'emp(ə)rə(r) / noun a ruler of a very large area of land and very many people

employ / ɪm'plɔɪ / verb to pay someone to work for you • *My uncle employs a gardener.*

empress / 'emprəs / noun the female ruler of a large area of land and its people or the wife of an emperor

empty / 'empti / adjective having nothing inside • *The archaeologists were disappointed that the ancient tomb was empty.*

encourage / ɪn'kʌrɪdʒ / verb to give hope and confidence • *The players were encouraged by their friends cheering loudly.*

enquire

encouragement / ɪn'kʌrɪdʒmənt / noun words or actions used to persuade or help someone to do something • *Our teacher gave us lots of encouragement before our exams.* *With Dad's encouragement, Sam decided to apply for the job and he got it!*

end / end / noun

1 the last part of something • *My uncle lives at the end of this street.*

2 the finish of something • *The end of the film was really sad and we all cried.*

endangered / ɪn'deɪndʒə(r)d / adjective in danger • *The endangered village is close to the smoking volcano.*

energy / 'enə(r)dʒi / noun

1 the power your body needs to do things • *If you don't sleep enough, you won't have the energy to do your work.*

2 the power that comes from nature, such as the sun and rivers, that can also be used to make other kinds of power such as electricity • *The sun's energy can be used to heat water and houses.*

engine / 'endʒɪn / noun

1 the vehicle at the front of a train that pulls it along • *The engine roared as it pulled the carriages out of the station.*

2 the machine inside a vehicle that makes it move • *The engine of Dad's car isn't working properly so he's taking it to the garage.*

engineer / ˌendʒɪ'nɪə(r) / noun a person who works with machines

engineering / ˌendʒɪ'nɪərɪŋ / noun designing and making machines • *My cousin is studying engineering at university.*

enjoy / ɪn'dʒɔɪ / verb to have a good time • *We really enjoyed our holiday because there were so many things to do.*

enjoyable / ɪn'dʒɔɪəb(ə)l / adjective giving pleasure • *We had an enjoyable day at my aunt's house.*

enormous / ɪ'nɔ:(r)məs / adjective very big • *A whale is an enormous animal.*

enquire / ɪn'kwɪə(r) / verb to ask, find out information • *The notice said, 'For more information, please enquire at the office'.*

Ee

enquiringly

enquiringly / ɪnˈkwaɪ(ə)rɪŋli / adverb
questioningly and in a way that expects an answer • *'I don't seem to have your homework, Sam,' the teacher said **enquiringly**.*

enter / ˈentə(r) / verb to go into a building or place

entertain / ˌentə(r)ˈteɪn / verb to amuse and interest • *At the party a clown **entertained** the children.*

entertaining / ˌentə(r)ˈteɪnɪŋ / adjective fun and interesting • *The play was really **entertaining** and I'm glad I saw it.*

entertainment / ˌentə(r)ˈteɪnmənt / noun a performance or event that is intended to be enjoyable • *The firework show was great **entertainment**.*

enthusiastic / ɪnˈθjuːziˈæstɪk / adjective
extremely interested in something and excited about it • *Dan is so **enthusiastic** about our visit to Paris that he's learning French.*

entire / ɪnˈtaɪə(r) / adjective whole, all of • *The **entire** class must do this homework again because everyone got it wrong.*

entrance / ˈentrəns / noun the way into a place or building • *The school **entrance** is on King Street.*

entry / ˈentri / noun the act of going into a place • *The policemen forced their **entry** into the thief's house.*

envelope / ˈenvələʊp / noun the flat paper cover that you put a letter into before you send it

epic / ˈepɪk / noun a long book, poem or film that contains a lot of exciting events

epic / ˈepɪk / adjective long and exciting • *Our journey to India by car was an **epic** adventure.*

equalise / ˈiːkwəlaɪz / verb
1 to make two things equal
2 (in football) to score a goal so that you have the same number of goals as the other team

equipment / ɪˈkwɪpmənt / noun objects that are needed for a particular activity • *You can hire the **equipment** that you need to go skiing.*

erupt / ɪˈrʌpt / verb to throw hot rocks and dust high into the air • *Sometimes a volcano **erupts** with a massive explosion.*

evil

eruption / ɪˈrʌpʃ(ə)n / noun the explosion of a volcano when ash and dust flies into the air and lava comes out of the crater

escalator / ˈeskəˌleɪtə(r) / noun a moving staircase that takes people from one floor of a building to the next floor

escape / ɪˈskeɪp / noun the action of getting away from something • *The story of the thief's **escape** was in the newspaper.*

essential / ɪˈsenʃ(ə)l / adjective completely necessary • *It is **essential** that you have the correct documents when you travel abroad.*

establish / ɪˈstæblɪʃ / verb to build or set up • *Our school was **established** 20 years ago.*

evening / ˈiːvɪŋ / noun the part of the day that comes between the afternoon and the night

event / ɪˈvent / noun something that happens • *The queen's visit to our school was an exciting **event**.*

eventually / ɪˈventʃuəli / adverb at last, finally
• *We travelled for three days but **eventually**, we reached home.*

every / ˈevri / adjective each one • *Try to find **every** mistake in your work and correct it. We catch the bus **every** day.*

everyone / ˈevri,wʌn / pronoun each one of the people in a group • *I hope **everyone** has understood the homework.*

everything / ˈevriθɪŋ / pronoun each one of all the things • ***Everything** in the sale is half price.*

everywhere / ˈevri,weə(r) / adverb all places • *We looked **everywhere** for the lost key.*

evidence / ˈeɪdɪ(ə)ns / noun
1 proof • *The policeman took fingerprints for **evidence** of the crime.*
2 information that shows something is true • *Please show me **evidence** that you are a member of this club.*

evident / ˈeɪdɪ(ə)nt / adjective clear • *It is not **evident** to me that you have done any revision at all.*

evidently / ˈeɪdɪ(ə)ntli / adverb clearly • *You have **evidently** done this work carefully so you will get a good mark.*

evil / ˈiːv(ə)l / adjective very, very bad • *The **evil** man stole from his neighbours.*

Ee

exactly

exactly / ɪg'zæk(t)li / adverb correctly, accurately
 • Ben measured the line **exactly**.

Exactly! / ɪg'zækt(t)li / quite right, I agree

"This film is boring," said Ben.

"**Exactly!**" replied Sam. "I wanted to watch the other one."

exam / ɪg'zæm / noun an important test • You must revise before your **exam**.

excellence / 'eksələns / noun the very good quality of something • The **excellence** of your idea makes it better than the rest.

excellent / 'eksələnt / adjective very good • This work is **excellent**, Ben, well done.

exchange / ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ / verb to change over and to give something in return for something else
 • Dad **exchanged** our old car for a new one.

excited / ɪk'saɪtɪd / adjective very happy and pleased • Ben was very **excited** the first time he went on a plane.

excitement / ɪk'saɪtmənt / noun a feeling of happiness and interest because something good is going to happen • There was a lot of **excitement** before the film star arrived.

exciting / ɪk'saɪtɪŋ / adjective
 1 making you feel excited and enthusiastic • We had such an **exciting** journey across India!
 2 full of action and interest • This film is really **exciting**, isn't it?

exclaim / ɪk'skleɪm / verb to speak in an excited or surprised voice • "There's an elephant in our garden!" Mum **exclaimed**.

execute / 'eksɪkju:t / verb to do • The skater **executed** a perfect jump then a fast spin.

exhausted / ɪg'zɔ:stɪd / adjective very tired

exhausting / ɪg'zɔ:stɪŋ / adjective very tiring

exhibition / ,eksɪ'bɪʃ(ə)n / noun a display of objects • The new **exhibition** in the museum is of old cars.

exhilarating / ɪg'zɪlə'reɪtɪŋ / adjective exciting and making you feel lively • Our flight in a hot-air balloon was an **exhilarating** experience.

exist / ɪg'zɪst / verb to live • You can't **exist** without breathing.

exploration

existence / ɪg'zɪst(ə)ns / noun the state of being a real or living thing • In the past, some people believed in the **existence** of creatures on Mars.

expand / ɪk'spænd / verb to get bigger • A balloon **expands** when you blow into it.

expanse / ɪk'spæns / noun a very large area • The desert is an **expanse** of sand and rock.

expansion / ɪk'spænz(ə)n / noun the act of getting bigger

expect / ɪk'spekt / verb to think something is going to happen in a particular way • Sam **expected** the exam to be easy but it wasn't.

expensive / ɪk'spensɪv / adjective costing a lot of money

expert / 'ekspɜ:(r)t / noun a person who knows a lot about something • My uncle is an **expert** in engineering.

explain / ɪk'spleɪn / verb

1 to give a reason for something • "The road is closed because of an accident," the policeman **explained**.

2 to make clear how something happens or has happened • This leaflet **explains** how your new computer works.

explanation / ,eksplə'neɪʃ(ə)n / noun
 1 a reason why something happens or has happened • Dad did not believe Sam's **explanation** for the broken window.
 2 how something works or has happened • The teacher gave an **explanation** of how a volcano erupts.

explode / ɪk'spləʊd / verb to break open very suddenly with a loud noise • In the adventure film the empty car **exploded** and burned quickly.

exploit / ɪk'splɔɪt / verb use for your own advantage • If your family is going to live in Paris you should **exploit** the opportunity and learn French while you are there.

exploitation / ,eksplɔɪ'teɪʃ(ə)n / noun the use of a person, animal or thing for your own purposes • Many people think that the **exploitation** of children in factories is wrong.

exploration / ,eksplə'reɪʃ(ə)n / noun the finding of new places • Space **exploration** is exciting but sometimes it is dangerous, too.

Ee

explore

explore / ɪk'splɔ:(r) / verb to travel through and look at a place for the first time • *When they arrived on the island, the children **explored** the beach first, then the woods.*

explorer / ɪk'splɔ:rə(r) / noun a person who explores

explosion / ɪk'spləʊʒ(ə)n / noun the sound when something explodes

expression / ɪk'spreʃ(ə)n / noun the look on a person's face that shows how they are feeling • *Ben's **expression** was one of delight, so we knew he'd passed his exams.*

extinct / ɪk'stɪŋkt / adjective no longer living or active • *Dinosaurs are **extinct**. This volcano has not erupted for 1,000 years so it is **extinct**.*

extreme / ɪk'stri:m / adjective much stronger or more difficult than usual • *The competition has been cancelled because of the **extreme** weather.*

extremely / ɪk'stri:mli / adverb very • *Mum was **extremely** pleased with Anna's high mark for her project.*

eye / aɪ / noun the part of your body that you use to see with

eyebrow / 'aɪ,braʊ / noun the line of hairs above your eye

eye-catching / 'aɪ,kætʃɪŋ / adjective attractive, impressive, unusual so that you notice it very easily • *The **eye-catching** dress was covered with sparkling jewels.*

eyelash / 'aɪ,læʃ / noun one of the short curved hairs that grow at the edge of your eyelid

eyelid / 'aɪ,lɪd / noun the skin that covers your eye when you shut it

Ff

fable / 'feɪb(ə)l / noun a story that teaches something • *The **fable** of the 'Lion and the mouse' teaches you that little friends can be big friends.*

face / feɪs / noun the front part of the head where the eyes, nose and mouth are

face / feɪs / verb to put the front part towards something • *The palace **faces** the river.*

fall

fact / fækt / noun something that is known to be true • *It is a **fact** that the earth goes round the sun. **In fact**, really, truly Ben is very tall. **In fact**, he is the tallest boy in the class.*

factory / 'fæktəri / noun a building where many people make things • *There are several car **factories** in our city.*

factual / 'fæktʃuəl / adjective to do with facts • *This **factual** book about mountains tells you a lot of interesting, true information.*

fail / feɪl / verb

1 to be unable to do something that you try to do • *Ben **failed** to run fast enough to be chosen for the team.*

2 to not pass a test • *My cousin **failed** his driving test and he was really annoyed.*

faint / feɪnt / adjective quiet • *We heard **faint** thunder as the storm came closer.*

fair / feə(r) / adjective

1 equal • *It's not **fair** if you have that big ice cream and I have this small one.*

2 reasonable • *Now you are older it's **fair** to ask you to help at home.*

3 a yellow colour of hair • *Lots of people in the north of Europe have **fair** hair.*

fair / feə(r) / noun a market with lots of stalls and displays to look at **funfair**, a place that has activities, games and rides such as roundabouts

falcon / 'fɔ:lkn / noun a kind of bird that catches other birds and small animals

fall / fɔ:l / verb to move downwards • *Rain is **falling** from the sky.*

phrasal verbs

1 **fall apart** to break into pieces because of age or being badly made • *The first time I wore my new shorts they **fell apart**, so Mum took them back to the shop.*

2 **fall down** to fall onto the ground • *Ben tripped over the cat and **fell down**. Rocks were **falling down** the mountain and crashing into the valley.*

3 **fall off** to fall from a place • *Harry **fell off** the slide in the playground and hurt himself.*

4 **fall over** to fall down and lie flat • *Grandma slipped on the ice and **fell over**. The bottle **fell over** and water spilled on the table.*

fame

fame / feim / noun the state of being known by everyone for doing something good or successful • *The footballer's **fame** grew with every goal he scored.*

familiar / fə'miliə(r) / adjective well known from previous experience or easily recognised • *I was pleased to see Mum and Dad's **familiar** faces when I got back from New York.*

family / 'fæm(ə)li / noun

1 a group made up of two parents and their children • *There are four children in the **family** that lives next door to us.*

2 the wider group of people who are related to you • *Most people in my **family** wear glasses including my aunts, uncles and my cousins.*

famous / 'feiməs / adjective known by lots of people for doing something great • *Shakespeare is the most **famous** English writer.*

fan / fæn / noun

1 a piece of electrical equipment that spins fast and cools the air in a room

2 folded paper or another material that opens to half a circle which people move in front of their faces to cool the air • *Chinese empresses had beautiful silk **fans**.*

3 supporter, follower • *Some film stars have so many **fans** that there is a special club that they can join.*

fancy dress / 'fænsi 'dres / noun a costume you wear to look like someone or something • *The children wore **fancy dress** to the party: Nina was a butterfly and Harry was a robot.*

fantastic / fæn'tæstik / adjective very good, amazing • *Sending people to the moon is a **fantastic** achievement in science.*

farm / fɑ:(r)m / noun an area of land and buildings where animals are kept and crops are grown

farmer / 'fɑ:(r)mə(r) / noun a person who looks after a farm

fascinate / 'fæsineɪt / verb to interest greatly • *Plants and insects have always **fascinated** Andy and now he's studying biology.*

fascinating / 'fæsineɪtɪŋ / adjective very interesting • *Ben thinks spiders are **fascinating**.*

feature

fascination / 'fæsɪ'neɪʃ(ə)n / noun strong interest • *The new computer game gave the boys hours of **fascination**.*

fashion / 'fæʃ(ə)n / noun

1 style of clothing • *Designers show their new **fashions** at special shows.*

2 a way of doing something • *Billy smiled at his teacher in a very silly **fashion** and she was cross.*

fast / fɑ:st / adjective having a lot of speed • ***Fast** cars can go at over 340 kilometres per hour.*

fast / fɑ:st / adverb quickly • *The car came round the corner very **fast** and we jumped out of the road.*

fat / fæt / adjective big and round • *My dad has decided he's too **fat** so he's stopped eating chips and pizzas.*

father / 'fɑ:ðə(r) / noun the male parent of a child

fault / fɔ:lt / noun the fact of being the cause of a bad situation • *The accident was the **fault** of the driver who was going too fast. **It's (somebody's) fault, It's my fault** I missed the bus – I got up late!*

favourite / 'feɪv(ə)rət / adjective the one liked more than any of the others • *This is my **favourite** computer game and I play it all the time.*

fear / fiə(r) / noun the feeling of being afraid • *Nina's **fear** of spiders stopped her from sitting in the garden.*

fearful / 'fiə(r)f(ə)l / adjective afraid • *Mum was **fearful** that we would miss our train because our taxi was late.*

fearfully / 'fiə(r)f(ə)li / adverb in a frightened way • *When Anna heard the strange sound she looked up **fearfully**.*

fearless / 'fiə(r)ləs / adjective without fear • *Heroes are usually brave and **fearless**.*

feast / fi:st / noun a big meal that is eaten on special occasions • *The whole family gathered for a **feast** when my cousin was married.*

feather / 'feðə(r) / noun the long, soft flat shapes that cover a bird's body • *Parrots have brightly coloured **feathers** on their bodies and long tail **feathers**.*

feature / 'fi:tʃə(r) / noun an important part of something • *One really good **feature** of this book is the wonderful photos.*

Ff

fed up

fed up / ˈfed ʌp / adjective bored and a bit cross • *The children were **fed up** because it rained for two days.*

feed / fi:d / verb

- 1 to eat • *Cows **feed** on grass.*
- 2 to give food • *The farmer **fed** the chickens.*

feel / fi:l / verb

- 1 to experience an emotion such as fear or sadness • *Amy **feels** happy when she sees her Grandma.*
- 2 to be in a particular condition • *Everyone **felt** cold when the pipes froze and the heating stopped working.*
- 3 to touch • *The doctor gently **felt** Nina's arm and realised it was broken.*
- 4 to give a sensation • *A cat's fur **feels** soft.*

fellow / ˈfeləʊ / noun a man • *Our neighbour is a strange **fellow**.*

female / ˈfi:meɪl / adjective a person or animal that gives birth to babies or produces young animals • *A **female** swan lays her eggs in a large nest made of sticks and plants.*

fence / fens / noun a barrier of wood or metal • *There was a **fence** round the field so that the sheep could not get out.*

festival / ˈfestɪv(ə)l / noun a time when there are singers, dancers, musicians and artists and many people watch them • *There will be drummers and dancers at the **festival** this year.*

fetch / fetʃ / verb to carry something from one place to another place • *Grandma's glasses are in the kitchen. Please **fetch** them.*

fever / ˈfi:və(r) / noun an illness when the body becomes too hot • *When someone has a **fever**, you must cool the body.*

fibre / ˈfaɪbə(r) / noun one of the very thin hair-like pieces that are in the threads that cloth is made from

fiction / ˈfɪkʃ(ə)n / noun writing that is not fact but the ideas of the writer • *Adventure stories are **fiction**. **science fiction**, stories about space and the future *The hero of this **science fiction** story is the captain of a huge spaceship.**

fiddle / ˈfɪd(ə)l / noun (informal) violin

field / fi:ld / noun an area of land that is used for keeping animals or growing crops • *There are 70 sheep in that **field**.*

fine

fierce / fiə(r)s / adjective

- 1 very frightening • *a **fierce** monster*
- 2 very strong • *a **fierce** storm*

fig / fig / noun a fruit

fight / faɪt / verb

- 1 to attack another person with your hands and feet • *The boys who were **fighting** in the playground were sent to the head teacher.*
- 2 to try to stop • *Doctors **fight** disease by teaching people about cleanliness.*

fight / faɪt / noun when two or more people hit each other

fighter / ˈfaɪtə(r) / noun a person who fights

file / faɪl / noun a folder that sheets of paper can be put into and taken out of • *I am keeping my 'Bears' project in a **file**. **fact file**, a file of information about a subject with facts that are easy to find and understand *There is a **fact file** about animals in the library.**

filling / ˈfɪlɪŋ / noun what is inside • *That tomato and cheese **filling** in your sandwich looks delicious.*

film / fɪlm / noun

- 1 a set of moving pictures that tell a story • *Dad took us to see the new science fiction **film** last week.*
- 2 the material that is used for taking photos or moving pictures • *I've taken so many pictures that I need a new **film** for my camera.*

film / fɪlm / verb to use a camera to record moving images

fin / fɪn / noun the narrow bony part that is on the back of a fish

final / ˈfaɪn(ə)l / adjective last • *The **final** match will decide the winner of the competition.*

final / ˈfaɪn(ə)l / noun the last match of a tournament or competition • *We have tickets for the **final** of the National Cup.*

finally / ˈfaɪn(ə)li / adverb at last • *We walked for two hours but **finally** we reached the castle.*

find / faɪnd / verb to discover something, often after looking for it • *The explorers **found** the lost city in the jungle.*

fine / faɪn / adjective

- 1 well, good • *My sister was ill yesterday but she's **fine** today.*
- 2 thin and light, not heavy • *Grandmother wove with **fine** threads.*

finely

finely / 'faɪnli / adverb1 into very small pieces • *Chop up the onion***finely.**2 correctly, with great care • *This is a very **finely** made chair.***finish** / 'fɪnɪʃ / verb1 to end • *The concert **finished** at ten o'clock.*2 to complete • *You must **finish** your project by the end of the week.***fire** / 'faɪə(r) / noun

1 a small pile of burning wood to make heat •

*The family sat round the **fire** on cold evenings.*2 flames and smoke that happen when a building is burning • *It took six hours to put out the **fire** at the factory.***fireman** / 'faɪə(r)mən / noun a person who has the job of putting out fires**firework** / 'faɪə(r),wɜː(r)k / noun a burning light that flies up into the sky and shows different colours, often used at night for celebrations • *In some cities there are **fireworks** at New Year.***firm** / fɜː(r)m / adjective strong and solid • *Ben took a **firm** hold of Pete's hand and pulled him out of the lake.***first** / fɜː(r)st / adverb1 before any others • *Anna came **first** in the race and she won a prize.*2 before doing something • *It's time for lunch but **first** you must wash your hands.***at first**, at the beginning ***At first** Harry didn't like school but now he loves it.***first-class** / ,fɜː(r)st'klaːs / adjective1 of the very best • *This writing is **first-class**, well done!*2 the best seats on a train or plane • *We are travelling **first-class** on the train to London.***fish** / fɪʃ / noun a creature that swims in the sea**fit** / fɪt / verb to match in size • *These shoes **fit** my feet.***fit** / fɪt / adjective in good health • *If you do sport every day, you will be **fit**.***fix** / fiks / verb1 to put firmly in place • *The notice that was **fixed** to the wall said 'Keep out'.*2 to mend • *I broke my bike but Dad **fixed** it for me.*

flower

fixtures list / 'fɪkstʃə(r)z ,lɪst / noun all the matches that have been arranged for a team**flag** / flæg / noun a piece of cloth on a stick that you can wave about or put on a pole**flagpole** / 'flæg,pəʊl / noun a tall, round piece of wood that holds a flag at the top**flame** / fleɪm / noun the hot, coloured part of a fire that moves**flannel** / 'flæn(ə)l / noun a kind of material**flap** / flæp / verb to move up and down • *The bird **flapped** its wings as it flew.***flash** / flæʃ / noun light for a few seconds • *When our TV broke there was a **flash** then a smell of burning.***flat** / flæt / adjective without folds or bumps • *The land was **flat** and we could see for many kilometres.***flight** / flaɪt / noun the act of flying • *Our **flight** from London to Paris took one hour.***float** / fləʊt / verb1 to stay on the surface of water • *If you put an ice cube into a glass of water, it will **float**.*2 to be held up by air • *The clown's huge bunch of balloons **floated** above his head.***flock** / flɒk / noun a large group of birds, sheep or goats • *This **flock** has over 100 sheep in it.***floe** / fləʊ / noun a large solid area of ice floating in the ocean • *As winter comes and the ocean gets colder, the ice **floes** get bigger.***flood** / flʌd / noun a sudden appearance of water on land because of heavy rainfall and rivers flowing over their banks and across the ground**floor** / flɔː(r) / noun1 the flat surface you walk on in a building • *All of the **floors** in the palace are made of marble.*2 a level in a building • *Our flat is on the second **floor**.***flour** / flauə(r) / noun the fine white powder that is used to make cakes and bread**flow** / fləʊ / verb to move along smoothly • *The water **flowed** under the bridge.***flower** / 'flauə(r) / noun the pretty, coloured part of a plant that contains the seeds • *My cousin carried a bunch of pink and white **flowers** at her wedding.*

Ff

fluffy

fluffy / 'flʌfi / adjective soft and light, like wool or feathers • *Nina picked up the kitten which felt fluffy and warm.*

flute / flu:t / noun a musical instrument that is played by blowing into it

fly / flai / verb

1 to move with wings • *Hundreds of white birds were flying across the sky.*

2 to travel on a plane • *We flew to Paris last week.*

3 to control a plane • *The pilot flew the helicopter close to the cliff.*

Ff

focus / 'fəʊkəs / verb

1 to concentrate attention • *You must focus on your school work this year.*

2 to bring together to one point • *The men focused their torchlights on the door of the old house.*

fog / fɒg / noun thick clouds that form close to the ground and make it difficult to see

fold / fəʊld / verb to bend a piece of paper or cloth and press one part of it over another • *You can make a fan if you fold a sheet of paper many times.*

follow / 'fɒləʊ / verb

1 to walk or drive behind someone who is going in the same direction • *The policeman followed the man to see where he went.*

2 to obey an order or advice • *Follow the instructions carefully.*

following / 'fɒləʊɪŋ / adjective next • *First we stayed with Grandma and the following week we visited my aunt.*

food / fu:d / noun what you eat to stay alive

fool / fu:l / noun a very silly person • *A person who drives too fast is a fool.*

foot / fut / noun (plural: feet) the part of your body at the end of your legs that you use to stand on

football / 'fʊtbɔ:l / noun a game for two teams in which goals are scored by kicking a ball into a net

forehead / 'fɒrɪd, 'fɔ:(r)hed / noun the front of the top part of the head

foreign / 'fɒrɪn / adjective from another country • *This is a foreign coin and I don't know where it's from.*

freeze

forest / 'fɒrɪst / noun a large area of land where many trees grow close together

forever / fə'revə(r) / adverb for all time

forget / fə(r)'get / verb to not remember • *If you have forgotten to bring your project today, you must bring it tomorrow.*

form / fɔ:(r)m / verb to make, to shape • *A potter forms clay into bowls and plates.*

fortunate / 'fɔ:(r)tʃənət / adjective lucky, happening in a better way than it might have done • *It was fortunate that the accident happened when there were few cars on the road.*

fortunately / 'fɔ:(r)tʃənətli / adverb luckily • *Grandpa fell down the steps but fortunately he wasn't hurt.*

forward / 'fɔ:(r)wə(r)d / noun (in football) a player in the front line who tries to score goals

forwards / 'fɔ:(r)wə(r)dz / adverb to a place in front • *The children ran forwards to see the king.*

foul / faʊl / noun an action that is against the rules • *In football, holding onto another player is a foul.*

found / faʊnd / verb to establish, to set up • *This university was founded 800 years ago.*

fountain / 'faʊntɪn / noun a structure that shoots water into the air • *The fountain in the park is in the middle of a pool.*

fox / fɒks / noun a wild animal like a small dog

free / fri: / adjective able to go anywhere • *Animals in a safari park are free so you must be careful as they are all wild. free time, time when you can choose what you do In the free time at the end of the lesson, Ben decided to work on his project.*

freedom / 'fri:dəm / noun the state of being free • *Wild birds have freedom but caged birds do not.*

freestyle / 'fri:stail / adjective when any way of doing things is allowed • *The competition was freestyle and the skier jumped backwards off the rock.*

freeze / fri:z / verb to become very cold • *Water freezes at 0 degrees Celsius and becomes ice. freeze to death, to become very cold and die The Arctic explorer lost his way and froze to death.*

freezer

freezer / 'fri:zə(r) / noun a large piece of electrical equipment that is used for freezing food

freezing / 'fri:ziŋ / adjective extremely cold, at 0 degrees or lower • *It was **freezing** last night so we lit the fire.*

fresh / freʃ / adjective

1 just made • *I've just squeezed these oranges so the juice is completely **fresh**.*

2 uncooked • ***Fresh** fruit and vegetables are good for you.*

freshly / 'freʃli / adverb recently • *This room has been **freshly** painted.*

fridge / frɪdʒ / noun short form of 'refrigerator'

friend / frend / noun someone you know well and like to be with

friendly / 'fren(d)li / adjective behaving in a pleasant, kind and helpful way

frightened / 'fraɪt(ə)nd / adjective scared • *Anna is **frightened** of spiders and she runs away when she sees one.*

frog / frɒg / noun a small creature that hops and swims and lives near rivers and ponds

front / frʌnt / noun the part of something that you see first • *The **front** of the building was painted white. **front** page, the first page of a newspaper* The wedding of the king and queen was on the **front** **page** of every newspaper. **in front of**, in a position before something else *The man was standing **in front of** us in the queue for the film.*

frown / fraʊn / verb to make a cross expression • *Billy asked a stupid question and his father **frowned** at him.*

frozen / 'frəʊz(ə)n / adjective colder than 0 degrees C • *The water in the pond is completely **frozen** and you can stand on it.*

fruit / fru:t / noun the part of a plant you can eat for food • *Some sweet **fruits** grow on trees but tomatoes grow on much smaller plants.*

fry / fraɪ / verb to cook in oil

full / ful / adjective no more space inside • *This bus is **full** now and nobody else can get on.*

fully / 'fʊli / adverb completely • *Anna is **fully** confident that she can win the competition.*

gale

fumes / fju:mz / noun (plural) smoke or gas that has a bad smell • *Lots of people complained about the **fumes** from the factory.*

fun / fʌn / noun a good time • *We had **fun** on holiday because the hotel had a great swimming pool and two tennis courts.*

funeral / 'fju:n(ə)rəl / noun the ceremony that happens when someone has died • *My grandfather was 90 when he died and many people came to his **funeral**.*

funny / 'fʌni / adjective amusing, entertaining • *Dad knows lots of **funny** jokes and he makes people laugh a lot.*

fur / fɜ:(r) / noun the thick soft hairs that grow on an animal • *A snow tiger has very thick, long **fur** that keeps it warm in the mountains.*

furious / 'fjuəriəs / adjective

1 very, very angry • *Our neighbour was **furious** when thieves stole his car.*

2 with a lot of speed and energy • *The car whizzed round the corner at a **furious** pace.*

furniture / 'fɜ:(r)nɪtʃə(r) / noun all the items such as tables, chairs, cupboards and beds in a house

furry / 'fɜ:ri / adjective having fur • *Bears and cats are **furry** animals.*

further / 'fɜ:(r)ðə(r) / adverb a longer distance away • *I'm not tired. Let's walk a bit **further**.*

fury / 'fjuəri / noun great anger • *Anna showed her **fury** by stamping her foot.*

fuss / fʌs / noun extra attention being given to something because it is a problem • *There was a **fuss** about our train tickets because the date wasn't clear. **make a fuss**, to call attention to something by complaining strongly* Aunt Jane made a **fuss** about the dirty table and asked the waiter to clean it.

future / 'fju:tʃə(r) / noun events that have not yet happened • *Science fiction stories are often set in the **future**.*

Gg

gale / geɪl / noun strong wind • *A **gale** can sometimes blow the roof off a building.*

Gg

gallery

gallery / 'gæləri / noun a room or building where pictures or other artworks are shown

gallop / 'gæləp / verb to move at the fastest possible speed, usually expressing the movement of a horse

game / geɪm / noun an activity that you play • Sam likes ball **games** like football but Ben prefers computer **games**.

gap / gæp / noun an empty space • There is a **gap** between the museum and the theatre.

Gg

gape / geɪp / verb to open the mouth wide often because of surprise • Harry **gaped** in amazement the first time he saw the sea.

garden / 'ga:(r)d(ə)n / noun the area around a house or building where trees and plants are grown • Grandma's **garden** has lovely flowers but we play on the grass in our **garden**.

garlic / 'ga:(r)lɪk / noun a vegetable similar to an onion that has a strong taste and smell

gasp / gɑ:sp / verb to draw your breath in suddenly and make a sound, usually because of surprise, fear or shortage of breath after running • The zoo-keeper **gasped** when he saw that the crocodile had escaped and was coming towards him.

gasp / gɑ:sp / noun the sound made when someone breathes in quickly through the mouth • We all gave a loud **gasp** when we saw Grandma's new car.

gate / geɪt / noun a door in a wall or fence around a field or garden

generator / 'dʒenə'reɪtə(r) / noun a machine that makes electricity • When the electricity is cut off, this hospital uses its own **generator**.

gentle / 'dʒent(ə)l / adjective calm and quiet, touching lightly • You must be **gentle** when you pick up a kitten.

geography / dʒi:'ɒgrəfi / noun the study of the earth's physical features and the people, plants and animals that live in different regions of the world

geologist / dʒi:'blɒdʒɪst / noun a person who studies the earth and its rocks • **Geologists** study rocks to find out how old they are.

girl

germ / dʒɜ:(r)m / noun a tiny creature that causes disease • Wash your hands to get rid of **germs**.

get / get / verb

1 to buy • Please would you **get** some tomatoes at the market?

2 to fetch • Dad will **get** Grandma from the station tomorrow morning.

3 to become • It **got** darker as the storm approached.

4 to receive • Sam **got** a present from his cousin.

5 to make progress • How far have you **got** with your project?

get dressed, to put clothes on We all **got dressed** in our best clothes before the wedding. **get rid of**, to stop having something Dad wants to **get rid of** his old car because it doesn't go well.

phrasal verbs

1 **get away** to escape • The detective was too slow to catch the thief and he **got away**.

2 **get on** to succeed • Sam has **got on** well this year because he has worked hard.

3 **get on with** to be friends with, to enjoy being with somebody • I **get on** really well **with** my cousin.

4 **get out** to take somebody / something out of something • Please **get out** your books. My sister **got the baby out** of the car.

5 **get out of** to avoid • I can't play today because I've got to tidy my room and I can't **get out of** doing it.

6 **get to** to arrive • We **got to** the station ten minutes before the train arrived.

7 **get up** to get out of bed • Anna **got up** early on the day of the exam.

geyser / 'gi:zə(r) / noun a hot spring that sometimes throws up water • Some **geysers** throw water five metres in the air.

giant / 'dʒaɪənt / noun a very large, tall person in stories • In 'Jack and the Beanstalk', Jack had to run away from the angry **giant**.

giant / 'dʒaɪənt / adjective enormous • A strange, **giant** fish was seen in the lake.

gift / ɡɪft / noun a present • We gave Aunt Meg a **gift** at the end of our visit.

giraffe / dʒə'reɪf / noun a large African animal with a very long neck

girl / ɡɜ:(r)l / noun a female child

glacier

glacier / 'glæsiə(r) / noun the mass of ice that moves very slowly down some high mountain valleys • *You can walk across a glacier but you must be careful.*

glance / gla:ns / verb to look quickly • *I only glanced at the woman so I'm afraid I can't describe her very well.*

glare / gleə(r) / verb to look crossly at • *The teacher glared at the boy who laughed.*

glass / gla:s / noun

1 a hard material that you can see through • *Windows are made of glass.*

2 an object for drinking from that is made of glass • *Could I have a glass of water, please?*

glass / gla:s / adjective made of glass • *There are small onions in this glass jar.*

glasses / 'glɑ:sɪz / noun (plural) the object that some people wear in front of their eyes to help them see • *Ben will have to wear glasses because he can't see the board in school.*

glimpse / glɪmps / noun a quick look at something • *If you are quiet you might get a glimpse of the tiger before it goes back into the jungle. catch a glimpse, to see something for a short time As we drove through the mountains we caught a glimpse of the river far below us.*

glisten / 'glɪs(ə)n / verb to shine because of being wet • *The pavements glistened in the sunlight after the storm.*

glitter / 'glɪtə(r) / verb to shine brightly with small flashes of light • *The stars are glittering in the sky.*

gloom / glu:m / noun dim light • *We walked into the cave and in the gloom we could see shells on the rocks.*

gloomy / 'glu:mi / adjective

1 without colour or light • *It was gloomy inside the cave.*

2 a little sad • *Everyone felt gloomy when our team lost the match.*

glorious / 'glɔ:riəs / adjective very beautiful in a way which makes you feel happy • *We had a glorious view from the hotel.*

glory / 'glɔ:ri / noun praise and admiration you get for doing something impressive • *Many doctors save lives but only a few get much glory.*

goose

glove / glʌv / noun clothing that you wear on your hand for warmth or protection • *Mum uses a thick glove when she picks up a hot pan and Dad wears a pair of gloves when he rides his motorbike.*

glow / gləʊ / verb to shine but not brightly • *The camp fire glowed red and in the dim light the explorers looked at their map.*

glue / glu: / noun a sticky material used to fix things together • *To make this paper box, cut out the shape and stick the sides together with glue.*

go / gəʊ / verb to move to a place • *Please go to the window and open it.*

phrasal verbs

1 **go by** to pass • *This tree gets taller as each year goes by.*

2 **go into** to start working or training in a particular profession or job • *Ben's decided to go into science but Sam is going into engineering.*

3 **go off** to not like anymore • *I wanted to visit New York but I've gone off the idea because I don't like flying.*

4 **go on** to continue • *You may go on with your project for homework.*

5 **go over** to revise, to read through again • *Always go over your essays at least once before you hand them in.*

goalkeeper / 'gəʊlki:pə(r) / noun the person who guards the goal and tries to prevent the other team's ball from going into it

goat / gəʊt / noun a small farm animal with horns kept for its milk and for meat

goggles / 'gɒg(ə)lz / noun (plural) special glasses that completely cover the eyes to protect them from water, wind and dust

gold / gəʊld / noun a precious yellow-coloured metal often used for wedding rings

golden / 'gəʊld(ə)n / adjective made of gold or of a gold appearance

good / gud / adjective

1 nice, pleasant, attractive • *Those cakes look good, don't they?*

2 well done or well made • *This is a good essay and you will get a high mark.*

good at, able to do something well *Are you good at sports?*

goose / gu:s / noun (plural: geese) a kind of large bird that swims on water and lives near it

Gg

gorgeous

gorgeous / 'gɔ:(r)dʒəs / adjective very lovely •
Dad gave Mum a **gorgeous** bunch of flowers for her birthday.

governess / 'gʌvə(r)nəs / noun a woman who lives with a family and teaches the children

government / 'gʌvə(r)nmənt / noun the group of people who run a country • The **government** has agreed to build more roads this year.

grab / græb / verb to take hold of something or someone firmly • Harry wanted to go to the edge of the cliff but Mum **grabbed** him and held his hand tightly.

Gg

graceful / 'greɪsf(ə)l / adjective moving in a beautiful way • Swans always look **graceful** when they swim on the water.

grade / greɪd / noun

1 mark, level of achievement • I hope I get a good **grade** in my exams!

2 level • My American cousin is in the fifth **grade**.

gradually / 'grædʒuəli / adverb slowly, a little at a time

gramophone / 'græməˌfəʊn / noun an old kind of machine for playing discs of music

grand / grænd / adjective impressive • The castle has a **grand** entrance with huge metal gates.
grand opening, the formal start of something through a celebration The mayor came to the **grand opening** of the school and there was a band and dancing.

Grandad / 'græn(d)ˌdæd / noun a name for your grandfather

grandfather / 'græn(d)ˌfɑːðə(r) / noun the father of your father or mother

Grandma / 'græn(d)ˌmɑː / noun a name for your grandmother

grandmother / 'græn(d)ˌmʌðə(r) / noun the mother of your father or mother

Grandpa / 'græn(d)ˌpɑː / noun a name for your grandfather

Granny / 'græni / noun a name for your grandmother

grape / greɪp / noun a small round fruit that is green or purple and grows in large bunches

grass / grɑːs / noun the plant with thin green leaves that grows on the ground especially in parks for people to walk and play on

grumble

great / greɪt / adjective

1 large, important • Lots of people visit The **Great** Wall of China.

2 very good, exciting • We watched a **great** film yesterday.

greedy / 'griːdi / adjective taking too much, especially food, so that others have less • Sam was **greedy** at the party and he took half the cake.

grid / grɪd / noun a barrier made of spaced metal rods going from top to bottom and side to side • The **grid** over the window stopped thieves from climbing into the house.

grief / griːf / noun a strong feeling of sadness • The man felt a lot of **grief** when his wife died.

grin / grɪn / verb to smile in a happy way showing your teeth

grind / graɪnd / verb to press down heavily on something and crush it into powder

groan / grəʊn / verb to make a sound as if in pain • Sam **groaned** when the teacher told him his marks.

ground / graʊnd / noun the surface under your feet when you are outdoors **ground floor**, the floor at street level The escalator goes from the **ground floor** to the second floor.

ground pepper / ˌgraʊnd 'pepə(r) / noun black pepper seeds that have been crushed and ground into a powder

group / gruːp / noun several things or people together • Ben and three of his friends worked together in a **group** of four.

grow / grəʊ / verb

1 to get bigger • My brother has **grown** five centimetres this year.

2 to keep plants and look after them • My uncle **grows** delicious tomatoes on his balcony.

growl / graʊl / verb the low sound made by a dog or a bear when it is angry

grown-up / ˌgrəʊn'ʌp / adjective adult • The little children can play when we visit Aunt Jane but now you are a teenager you must show more **grown-up** behaviour.

grumble / 'grʌmb(ə)l / verb complain, speak a little crossly about something • The old man **grumbled** because the train was an hour late.

grunt

grunt / grʌnt / verb to make a short sound without using words • *I asked Dad if I could watch TV and he just **grunted** because he was nearly asleep.*

guarantee / ,gærən'ti: / noun a promise that something will happen or be done • *Ben gave his teacher a **guarantee** that he would finish his project.*

guard / gɑ:(r)d / noun a soldier who keeps watch on a building, part of a building or a person • *The **guards** stopped the stranger from entering the palace.*

guess / ges / verb to give an answer that you think could be right • *When you don't know the answer, just **guess**.*

guest / gest / noun a person who is asked to go to a place and is welcomed there • *We had many **guests** in our house for the feast.*

guidance / 'gaid(ə)ns / noun ideas and suggestions to help someone to do something • *When Ben has a problem with his homework he asks his dad for **guidance**.*

guide / gaid / noun a person who shows the way • *A **guide** took us to the caves in the desert.*

guilty / 'gilti / adjective having done something wrong • *Dad thought that Ben had broken the window because he had a **guilty** look on his face.*

guitar / gi'tɑ:(r) / noun a musical instrument with strings

gull / gʌl / noun a kind of bird

gunpowder / 'gʌn,paʊdə(r) / noun a powder that is used to make an explosion

gymnastics / dʒɪm'næstiks / noun a sport in which a person moves and bends their body in particular ways

Hh

habitat / 'hæbitæt / noun the place where an animal or plant lives or is found • *The natural **habitat** of a tiger is the forest.*

hair / heə(r) / noun the thin strands that grow on your head • *Anna has long, straight **hair** and her friend, Mia, has short, curly **hair**.*

hairy / 'heəri / adjective having a lot of hair • *Some spiders are really **hairy**! Ugh!*

hardly

half / hæf / pronoun one of two equal parts of a number or object • *Would you like **half** of my cake? **Half** of the students in this class have passed the exam. **half past**, 30 minutes after the hour **half price**, half of the price first asked for We got **half price** tickets to see the film. **half-time**, the short period of time in the middle of a match when players have a short rest*

hall / hɔ:l / noun

1 a very big room or building where lots of people can meet together • *The concert was held in the school **hall**.*

2 the area inside the front door to a house • *We hang our coats in the **hall**.*

hammer / 'hæmə(r) / noun a tool for hitting nails with

hand / hænd / noun the part of your body at the end of your arm that you use to hold things with phrasal verb **hand in** to give work to a teacher • *We **handed in** our homework this morning.*

handsome / 'hæns(ə)m / adjective very good-looking (a man)

handy / 'hændi / adjective useful, helpful • *It's **handy** to keep a rubber in your bag so you can correct mistakes.*

hang / hæŋ / verb to swing freely from something • *In the forest, monkeys were **hanging** from the trees. We **hang** lights in this tree when we have a party outside.*

happen / 'hæpən / verb to take place • *Something funny **happened** at school today.*

happiness / 'hæpinəs / noun good feelings of joy • *The old lady's grandchildren gave her great **happiness**.*

happy / 'hæpi / adjective feeling pleased with no worries

hard / hæ:(r)d / adjective stiff, firm and not easy to break or bend • *Firemen wear **hard** helmets to protect their heads.*

hard / hæ:(r)d / adverb

1 strongly • *Ben kicked the ball **hard** and it broke the window.*

2 with concentration and effort • *If you work **hard**, you will pass the exam.*

hardly / 'hɑ:(r)dli / adverb not much • *It was so dark in the cave that we could **hardly** see.*

Hh

harm

harm / ɦɑ:(r)m / verb hurt • *Luckily, no one was **harm**ed during the storm.*

harmful / 'ɦɑ:(r)m(ə)l / adjective creating damage or hurt • *Breathing in a lot of smoke is **harmful** to people's health.*

harness / 'ɦɑ:(r)nɪs / noun straps or ropes that are put round an animal to attach it to a vehicle so it can pull it • *The boy put a **harness** on the horse and it pulled the cart out of the barn.*

harsh / ɦɑ:(r)ʃ / adjective extremely difficult, hard and unpleasant

hat / ɦæt / noun a piece of clothing worn on the head

hate / ɦeɪt / noun the very strong feeling of not liking someone or something • *The evil man felt only **hate** for other people.*

hate / ɦeɪt / verb to dislike someone or something very much • *Sam **hates** eggs and he never eats them.*

head / ɦed / noun the round part of your body with hair on top and your face at the front

headdress / 'ɦed,dres / noun a decorated item made to be worn on the head, often to show a person's importance • *Some Native American chiefs wore **headdresses** made of eagle feathers.*

header / 'ɦedə(r) / noun (in football) directing the ball using the head

heading / 'ɦedɪŋ / noun the word or a few words above a paragraph that tell you what the paragraph will be about • *This paragraph is about elephants in Africa and the **heading** is 'African elephants'.*

headline / 'ɦed,lam / noun the words with large letters at the top of a newspaper report • *The **headline** above the report of the fire was 'Amazing Rescue!'*

headscarf / 'ɦed,ska:(r)f / noun a scarf worn over the head

headset / 'ɦed,set / noun large earphones with a microphone attached used by pilots so they can listen and hear while they are flying a plane

health / ɦelθ / noun the condition of being well or not • *Our neighbour has bad **health** and the doctor often visits him.*

hide

healthy / 'helθi / adjective in good health • *Ben is a **healthy** boy because he eats good food and sleeps well.*

hear / ɦɪə(r) / verb to take sound in through your ears • *We **heard** dogs barking in the distance.*

heart / ɦɑ:(r)t / noun part of the body that sends blood around it • *If you do sport every day, your **heart** will work better.*

heat / ɦi:t / verb to make something hot • *The sun **heats** the earth.*

heavy / 'hevi / adjective having a lot of weight • *An elephant is one of the **heaviest** animals.*

height / ɦaɪt / noun how high something is • *The **height** of the tree is ten metres.*

heir / ɛə(r) / noun the person who will receive the money of another person when he or she dies • *Our neighbour is the **heir** to a rich uncle.*

helicopter / 'helɪ,kɒptə(r) / noun an aircraft with blades on top that spin round fast and lift it into the air • ***Helicopters** can land in a small area and are often used for mountain rescues.*

helmet / 'helmit / noun a hard round-shaped cover for the head to protect it

help / ɦelp / verb to do things for people to make things better for them • *Ben **helped** Grandma to carry the shopping.*

hen / ɦen / noun a farm bird kept for its eggs

herb / ɦɜ:(r)b / noun a plant that has a strong smell and is used in cooking

hero / 'ɦɪərəʊ / noun a man who does good and brave things and who other people think is great • *Superman is a **hero** in a story.*

heroine / 'ɦerəʊɪn / noun a woman who other people think is a good and brave person • *Florence Nightingale became a **heroine** because she helped many wounded soldiers.*

hesitate / 'hezɪteɪt / verb to stop and think for a moment before doing something • *Anna **hesitated** before she spoke but she got the answer right.*

hidden / 'ɦɪd(ə)n / adjective not seen by anyone • *The way into the cave was **hidden** by plants.*

hide / ɦaɪd / verb to go where no one can see you • *When my sister is scared, she **hides** under her bed.*

hideous

hideous / 'hɪdiəs / adjective horrible and ugly
 • My aunt has a **hideous** vase made of purple and orange glass.

high / haɪ / adjective a long way up • The mountains are so **high** that they have snow on the top in summer.

hill / hɪl / noun an area that is higher than the land around it

hippo / 'hɪpəʊ / noun a large African animal that lives near rivers

hiss / hɪs / noun the sound that a snake makes
 • We heard a **hiss** from under the bush so we stayed away.

history / 'hɪst(ə)ri / noun events that happened in the past • The **history** of this castle is very interesting.

hit / hɪt / verb
 1 to move your hand quickly against something in order to hurt • My little brother **hit** my sister on her face and made her cry.
 2 to move an object quickly against something
 • The carpenter **hit** the nail firmly with his hammer.

hobby / 'hɒbi / noun something you like doing in your free time • Pete's **hobby** is swimming and Meg's **hobby** is collecting dolls.

hold / həʊld / verb to have something in your hands or arms • In this photo I was five and I'm **holding** a doll.

phrasal verb **hold on**
 1 to wait on the telephone • Please **hold on** a moment and I'll fetch the person you want to speak to.
 2 to grip tightly • The bus went quickly round the bend and the passengers **held on** tightly.

hole / həʊl / noun
 1 a space made in the ground • The thieves dug a deep **hole** to put the treasure in.
 2 a space in a surface or other material • a **hole** in the roof, a **hole** in your trousers

hollow / 'hɒləʊ / adjective with nothing inside • This old log is **hollow** and you can crawl through it.

home / həʊm / noun the place where you live

homework / 'həʊm,wɜ:(r)k / noun school work that you do at home

honest / 'ɒnɪst / adjective truthful, doing things in the correct way • The shopkeeper was **honest** and measured a full kilogram of fruit.

hot spring

honestly / 'ɒnɪs(t)li / adverb
 1 truthfully (informal)
 2 an exclamation showing a little annoyance
 • Look at this dirty floor! **Honestly!** I cleaned it five minutes ago.

hood / hʊd / noun the part of a coat or cloak that is fixed to the neck that you can pull over your head

hook / hʊk / noun a small piece of metal shaped like a U for hanging things on

hop / hɒp / verb to jump forwards on one leg only

horrible / 'hɒrəb(ə)l / adjective nasty or unpleasant • The weather was **horrible** so we stayed indoors.

horrid / 'hɒrɪd / adjective not nice • Ben was **horrid** to his sister and she cried.

horrifying / 'hɒrɪfaɪɪŋ / adjective very frightening
 • Some films are **horrifying** and I never watch them.

horror / 'hɒrə(r) / noun fear and dislike • Mum has a **horror** of snakes and she won't even look at them in the zoo.

horse / hɔ:(r)s / noun a large animal kept for riding and pulling carts

horseback / 'hɔ:(r)s,bæk / noun by horse • In the past, most people travelled on **horseback**.

hose / həʊz / noun a long, thin tube for running water along • When the firemen turned on their **hoses**, water spurted onto the burning building.

hospital / 'hɒspɪt(ə)l / noun the building where doctors and nurses help people who are ill or injured

host / həʊst / noun the person who welcomes the guests • My uncle was the **host** at the feast.

host / həʊst / verb to welcome guests • When you **host** a feast you must be friendly to everyone.

hot / hɒt / adjective how you feel when there's a lot of sun in summer

hotel / həʊ'tel / noun a big building with lots of bedrooms for guests • We stayed in a small **hotel** next to the beach.

hot spring / ,hɒt 'sprɪŋ / noun hot water that rises up out of the ground and makes a pool • Some **hot springs** are deep enough to swim in.

Hh

hour

hour / 'aʊə(r) / noun 60 minutes

house / haʊs / noun a building that usually one family only lives in

hug / hʌg / verb to hold someone in your arms •
We all **hugged** Grandma on her birthday.

huge / hju:dʒ / adjective very large

hugely / 'hju:dʒli / adverb very, extremely •
Grandfather is **hugely** admired for his kindness to poor people.

hum / hʌm / noun a low steady sound from a machine or a person's voice • There was a quiet **hum** in the computer room.

human / 'hju:mən / adjective to do with people •
The **human** brain is larger than the brain of a dog.

hungry / 'hʌŋɡri / adjective how you feel when you need food

hunt / hʌnt / verb to follow and catch • Lions **hunt** zebras and kill them.

hurriedly / 'hʌrɪdli / adverb in a hurried way • Ben did his homework **hurriedly** and he got a bad mark.

hurry / 'hʌri / verb

1 to go quickly • **Hurry** into school, you're late.
2 do something quickly • Don't **hurry** your work, do it carefully.

in a hurry

1 having little time • I'm **in a hurry** so I can't stop and talk.

2 quickly • I drew this **in a hurry** so it's not very good.

phrasal verb

hurry up be quick • **Hurry up**, the bus is waiting for us.

hurt / hɜ:(r)t / verb to feel bad • My leg **hurts** because I fell over.

husky / 'hʌski / noun a kind of dog that is used to pull sledges in the Arctic

li

ice / aɪs / noun frozen water • Would you like **ice** in your orange juice? The **ice** on the pond is thick this winter.

ice cream / aɪs 'kri:m / noun a frozen sweet made of sugar and milk • My favourite kind of **ice cream** is chocolate and banana.

important

ice floe / 'aɪs ˌfləʊ / noun a large flat area of ice that floats in the Arctic ocean

idea / aɪ'dɪə / noun

1 a thought • Use your own **ideas** to finish the story.
2 a suggestion • It was Ben's **idea** to go to the club and we all agreed.

ignorance / 'ɪɡnərəns / noun not knowing about important facts and information • The boy's **ignorance** was surprising because he had just passed his exams.

ill / ɪl / adjective sick, not feeling well • Anna stayed at home yesterday because she was **ill**.

illness / 'ɪlnəs / noun the condition of being ill • Because of Grandma's **illness**, we didn't go on holiday.

illustrate / 'ɪləstreɪt / verb to draw or include pictures to go with a piece of writing • Please **illustrate** your projects with suitable pictures. The travel guide was **illustrated** with beautiful coloured photos.

imagination / ɪˌmædʒɪˈneɪʃ(ə)n / noun the ability to form pictures and new ideas in your mind • The spaceship in Ben's story came from his **imagination**. Anna has a lot of **imagination** and she writes amazing stories.

imagine / ɪˌmædʒɪn / verb to think of something in your mind • Ben **imagined** he saw something in the corner of his room but when he turned on the light there was nothing there.

immediately / ɪˌmiːdiətli / adverb at once, now • Please come here **immediately**.

immensely / ɪˌmensli / adverb a lot, extremely

impatient / ɪmˈpeɪʃ(ə)nt / adjective not wanting to wait • The boy was **impatient** and pushed through the crowd to get onto the bus.

imperfect / ɪmˈpɜ:(r)fɪkt / adjective not perfect, having a fault • **Imperfect** pots were being sold at half price in the market.

impolite / ɪmpəˈlaɪt / adjective rude, with bad manners • It is **impolite** to take things without asking.

importance / ɪmˈpɔ:(r)t(ə)ns / noun the necessary quality of something • Our teacher pointed out the **importance** of always telling the truth.

important / ɪmˈpɔ:(r)t(ə)nt / adjective having a lot of power and being necessary • A king is an **important** man.

impress

impress / ɪm'pres / verb to create a good opinion • Ben's essay **impressed** his teacher so he got a good mark.

impressed / ɪm'prest / adjective have a good feeling about something and admiring it • Ben's teacher was very **impressed** with his project.

impression / ɪm'pres(ə)n / noun
1 a feeling or idea about someone or something • I had the **impression** that someone was walking behind me. John made a good **impression** on his teacher because he worked hard.
2 a mark that is made by pressing something onto a surface • The chair leg left a deep **impression** on the carpet.

impressive / ɪm'presɪv / adjective remarkable, making a strong impression • The pianist's performance was **impressive** and everyone applauded loudly.

improbable / ɪm'prɒbəb(ə)l / adjective not likely • A new library in our school is **improbable** because a sports hall is being built this year.

improvement / ɪm'pru:vmənt / noun the better quality of something • Anna's work showed a huge **improvement** once she stopped watching TV all the time.

in / ɪn / preposition inside something • Peas grow **in** a green pod.

in / ɪn / adverb into something • The restaurant is open so let's go **in**.

include / ɪn'klu:d / verb make something a part of something else • You should **include** pictures and maps in your desert project.

inclusion / ɪn'klu:ʒ(ə)n / noun the act of including • The **inclusion** of Ben in the basketball team surprised everyone.

incredible / ɪn'kredəb(ə)l / adjective
1 cannot be believed • The man gave **incredible** reasons for his actions and he was found guilty.
2 (informal) amazing • You've made **incredible** progress this year and you have top marks.

independent / ɪn'dɪpəndənt / adjective without help or support from anyone • When children grow up, they learn to be **independent** of their parents.

indirect / ɪn'daɪ'rekt / adjective not going straight to somewhere • The **indirect** route to the city goes around the mountains.

inspire

indoor / ɪn'dɔ:(r) / adjective inside a house or building • In the winter we have **indoor** sports because it's too cold to play outside.

industrial / ɪn'dʌstriəl / adjective to do with industry and making things • **Industrial** towns and cities often have a lot of traffic, especially big lorries.

industry / ɪn'dʌstri / noun the process of making things that people use • The main **industry** in our city is making cars.

infect / ɪn'fekt / verb to spread germs to someone • Dirty sheets can **infect** a patient.

informal / ɪn'fɔ:(r)m(ə)l / adjective friendly, relaxed • Sam had an **informal** talk with his teacher about his future career.

information / ɪnfə(r)'meɪʃ(ə)n / noun knowledge or facts about someone or something • You can find **information** about the castle in the guidebook.

ingredient / ɪn'gri:diənt / noun something that is put together with one or more others in order to make something • The **ingredients** for this cake are eggs, butter, sugar and flour.

initial / ɪ'nɪʃ(ə)l / adjective first • The **initial** letter of Ben's name is B. My **initial** idea for Mum's present was a bag but then I decided on a scarf.

injure / ɪn'dʒə(r) / verb to harm or to wound • This broken glass could **injure** someone so let's pick it up and put it in the bin.

injury / ɪn'dʒəri / noun a wound • Ben went to hospital because he had a bad **injury**.

ink / ɪŋk / noun a coloured liquid that people use for writing and printing

insect / ɪn'sekt / noun a small creature such as a fly or an ant

inseparable / ɪn'sep(ə)rəb(ə)l / adjective cannot be separated • Anna and her cousin Meg are **inseparable** and they spend every day together.

inside / ɪn'saɪd / adverb in something • We opened the box and we saw a crown **inside**.

inside / ɪn'saɪd / preposition into a room or building • It rained and we went **inside** our house.

inspire / ɪn'spaɪə(r) / verb to give someone ideas and enthusiasm • The archaeologist **inspired** his audience to visit the museum by telling them the history of many objects.

instinct

instinct / 'ɪnstɪŋkt / noun natural behaviour

• When lions hunt and kill, they are following their **instincts**.

instruction / ɪn'strʌkʃ(ə)n / noun a thing you must do to make or do something • Anna read the **instructions** for making the doll before she started.

instrument / 'ɪnstrʊmənt / noun

1 an object made for playing music on • A piano is a large musical **instrument**.

2 a small tool used by a surgeon to do an operation on a person • The **instruments** used in an operation must be extremely clean.

insulate / 'ɪnsjʊleɪt / verb to protect from cold • These boots have fur inside to **insulate** your feet.

li

intelligent / ɪn'telɪdʒ(ə)nt / adjective clever and able to think • Sam is good at his lessons because he is very **intelligent**.

interesting / 'ɪntrəstɪŋ / adjective holding your attention and making you want to know more • Ben found the planets so **interesting** that he decided to study astronomy.

internal / ɪn'tɜː(r)n(ə)l / adjective inside • The **internal** doors of this building are all made of glass.

international / ɪntə(r)'næʃ(ə)nəl / adjective between different countries or nations • Fifty countries are taking part in this **international** football competition.

internet / 'ɪntə(r)net / noun the system that joins computers all over the world • We found lots of information about lions on the **internet**.

interview / 'ɪntə(r)vjuː / noun the act of asking questions and answering • The **interview** with the actor was very interesting.

interview / 'ɪntə(r)vjuː / verb to ask someone questions and listen to their answers • We **interviewed** an Olympic runner for our school magazine last week.

interviewee / ɪntə(r)vjuː'iː / noun the person who is interviewed • The **interviewee** was very nervous.

interviewer / 'ɪntə(r)vjuːə(r) / noun the person who asks the questions • The **interviewer** was very friendly.

into / 'ɪntuː / preposition to the inside of something • We walked up the steps and **into** the museum.

ironing

intricate / 'ɪntrɪkət / adjective detailed in structure or design • The pattern on this butterfly's wings is very **intricate**.

intricately / 'ɪntrɪkətli / adverb in a detailed way

intriguing / ɪn'triːɡɪŋ / adjective a little mysterious and interesting • The plot of this story is **intriguing** and I don't know what is going to happen next.

introduce / ɪn'trə'djuːs / verb to bring forward someone for people to meet • My friend **introduced** me to his parents.

introduction / ɪn'trə'dʌkʃ(ə)n / noun the start of something • The **introduction** of music lessons was popular with the children.

invent / ɪn'vent / verb to design or create something new

invention / ɪn'venʃ(ə)n / noun something new that is made or designed • The **invention** of the car changed people's lives.

inventor / ɪn'ventə(r) / noun a person who has ideas for new things and makes them • An American **inventor** made the first electric light.

invest / ɪn'vest / verb to put money into something to make it better and more valuable • Dad **invested** in my uncle's electrical company and now it's really big and worth a lot.

invisible / ɪn'vɪzəb(ə)l / adjective cannot be seen • Stars are **invisible** during the day.

invitation / ɪnvɪ'teɪʃ(ə)n / noun a letter or card asking someone to go to an event or to do something • We sent the mayor an **invitation** to our school play. The author received an **invitation** to open the new library.

invite / ɪn'vaɪt / verb to ask someone to do something • We've **invited** our neighbours to come to my sister's wedding.

iris / 'aɪrɪs / noun the coloured part of the eye

iron / 'aɪə(r)n / noun

1 a hard, strong metal • Bridges are often made of **iron**.

2 a piece of electrical equipment that is heated and used to smooth clothes

ironing / 'aɪə(r)nɪŋ / noun the task of using an iron to smooth clothes • Mum listens to the radio while she does the **ironing**.

island

island / 'aɪlənd / noun an area of land with sea all round it

isolation / ˌaɪsəˈleɪʃ(ə)n / noun being separated from others • *If people live in **isolation** they can become very lonely and depressed.*

Jj

jacket / 'dʒækɪt / noun a piece of clothing like a short coat • *It was very hot in the restaurant so the men took off their **jackets**.*

jar / dʒɑ:(r) / noun a container, often made of glass, for keeping food in • *Mum took a **jar** of tiny onions to Grandma because she likes them.*

jaw / dʒɔ:/ noun one of the two bones of the mouth • *The lion roared and showed its teeth on its bottom **jaw**.*

jeans / dʒi:nz / noun (plural) trousers made of a blue material called denim • *Lots of students wear **jeans** because they last a long time.*

jellyfish / 'dʒeliˌfɪʃ / noun a sea creature without bones that has many long tentacles

jewel / 'dʒu:əl / noun a precious stone that has been cut and polished so that it shines • *My sister was given a ring with five **jewels** on it when she was married.*

jewellery / 'dʒu:əlri / noun items like necklaces, rings, earrings, etc. that people wear • *Mum keeps her **jewellery** in a box in the bedroom.*

job / dʒɒb / noun the work that someone does • *My cousin has just got a **job** as a nurse in a hospital.*

join / dʒɔɪn / verb

1 to put things together • *You can use glue to **join** these pieces of wood together.*

2 to become a member of a group • *Ben has **joined** the chess club.*

joke / dʒɔuk / verb to tell a funny story that isn't true • *When Ben said he saw an elephant in the playground, he was **joking**.*

journey / 'dʒɜ:(r)ni / noun the travel from one place to another • *Our **journey** to Russia took six hours.*

joy / dʒɔɪ / noun happiness

jubilant / 'dʒu:bɪlənt / adjective very happy and joyful • *The crowds were **jubilant** as they watched their team returning with the World Cup.*

keep

judo / 'dʒu:dəʊ / noun a sport where two people try to push each other onto the ground

jug / dʒʌg / noun a container with a handle for keeping liquid in and pouring it out • *The waiter put a **jug** of water on the table.*

juggler / 'dʒʌglə(r) / noun a performer who can throw several objects into the air and keep catching and throwing them

juice / dʒu:s / noun the liquid from a crushed fruit • *Sam drinks a glass of orange **juice** every morning.*

jump / dʒʌmp / verb to push yourself off the ground and into the air for a moment • *The children **jumped** up and down with excitement when their father came back from London.*

jumper / 'dʒʌmpə(r) / noun a piece of clothing that you pull over your head and which covers the upper body and arms, and is often made of wool

jungle / 'dʒʌŋg(ə)l / noun a very large forest in a hot, wet part of the world

just / dʒʌst / adverb only • *There were **just** two children on the bus. **just then**, at a certain moment We thought the house was empty but **just then**, we heard a loud noise.*

justify / 'dʒʌstɪfaɪ / verb to show that there is a good reason for something • *In the TV interview, the businessman **justified** his decision to close the factory.*

Kk

kangaroo / ˌkæŋɡəˈru:/ noun a large animal from Australia with strong back legs and a thick tail • ***Kangaroos** don't run, they jump!*

keen / ki:n / adjective wanting to do something well • *All our basketball players are very fit and **keen**. **keen on**, enthusiastic about I'm **keen on** science fiction but I don't enjoy science.*

keep / ki:p / verb

1 to have something and not throw it in the bin • *Let's **keep** this picture. We can use it in our project.*
2 to stay, to remain • ***Keep** still while I'm cutting your hair.*

phrasal verbs

1 **keep off** to stay off • *Sometimes in a park you have to **keep off** the grass.*

Kk

keyboard

2 **keep out** to stay out of or away from a place
 • *Dad told us to **keep out** of the study while he is working.*

keyboard / 'ki:bɔ:(r)d / noun

1 part of a musical instrument such as a piano that has keys you touch to play sounds

2 a musical instrument that has a keyboard, especially an electric piano

3 a piece of computer equipment with keys on it that you press to enter information into a computer

kick / kɪk / verb to push hard with your foot •
*Ben **kicked** the ball hard and it went over the wall.*

kickoff / 'kɪk,ɒf / noun the first kick at the centre spot that begins a football match • *The game was thrilling from the **kickoff**.*

kid / kɪd / noun a very informal word for a child

kill / kɪl / verb to end the life of a person or animal • *The hunter could not **kill** the leopard because it ran away.*

LI

kilogram / 'kɪlə,ɡræm / noun the weight equal to 1,000 grams

kilometre / 'kɪlə,mɪtə(r) kɪ'lɒmɪtə(r) / noun the distance equal to 1,000 metres

kind / kaɪnd / noun one of a group • *A parrot is a **kind** of bird.*

kind / kaɪnd / adjective gentle and friendly, taking care of other people • *Our neighbour is very **kind** and she cooked for us when Mum was ill.*

kindergarten / 'kɪndə(r),ɡɑ:(r)t(ə)n / noun a school or class for very young children

kindly / 'kaɪndli / adverb in a kind way • *The teacher spoke **kindly** to the little boy.*

king / kɪŋ / noun a name for the powerful male ruler of a country • *The first **kings** of England lived in the Tower of London.*

kingfisher / 'kɪŋ,fɪʃə(r) / noun a kind of bird that lives beside rivers

kiosk / 'ki:ɒsk / noun a tiny shop in a station or on the street • *Dad bought me some chocolate and a bottle of water from the **kiosk**.*

kitchen / 'kɪtʃən / noun the room in the house where cooking is done

laden

kite / kaɪt / noun an object made of wood and cloth or paper, that can fly in the sky on the end of a string • *A windy day is good for flying a **kite**. **kite surfer**, a person who travels across the sea on a board that is attached to a very large kite*

kitten / 'kɪt(ə)n / noun a very young cat

knee / ni:/ noun the part of your leg that bends
 • *Anna fell down and hurt her **knee** when she was playing basketball. **knee pad**, a thick piece of material that can be worn over the knee to protect it Ben fell off his skateboard but he didn't hurt his knees because he was wearing **knee pads**.*

kneel / ni:l / verb to go down on your knees •
*The boys were **kneeling** on the floor playing with their toy cars.*

knife / naɪf / noun a sharp tool for cutting things and eating with

knock / nɒk / verb to hit something to make a sound • *You must **knock** on the door before you go in.*

know / nəʊ / verb

1 to recognise • *I **know** that boy.*
 2 to understand • *I **know** what you mean.*
 3 to have facts about • *I **know** how to play chess.*

knowledge / 'nɒlɪdʒ / noun what you know •
***Knowledge** is always useful and it's a good thing to go on learning all your life.*

koala bear / kəʊ'ɑ:lə ,beə(r) / noun a small Australian bear that lives in trees and eats leaves • ***Koala bears** look nice but they can be fierce.*

LI

label / 'leɪb(ə)l / noun a few words on or near an object that give information about it • *The **label** on this dress says that it is for a girl aged ten.*

ladder / 'lædə(r) / noun a tall piece of equipment you can climb up to reach high places • *The fireman climbed up a **ladder** to rescue the people on the second floor.*

laden / 'leɪd(ə)n / adjective full of something •
*The lorry was **laden** with sacks of vegetables being taken to market.*

lady

lady / 'leɪdi / noun a more formal word for a woman • *The **lady** who is next to my uncle is my aunt.*

lagoon / lə'guːn / noun a bay on the coast that has land almost all round it • *The water in a **lagoon** is usually calm.*

lake / leɪk / noun a large area of water with land all round it • *My dad and my uncle often go fishing on the **lake** in the mountains.*

lamp / læmp / noun a light • *The **lamp** on the outside of the house lit up the entrance.*

land / lænd / noun the parts of the earth that are not under the oceans • *Sailors travel to another **land** by ship.*

land / lænd / verb to come onto land from a boat or a plane • *Our plane **landed** at the airport on time.*

landslide / 'lænd(s)laɪd / noun a fall of earth and stones down a slope or hillside • *The road was completely blocked by a **landslide**.*

lane / leɪn / noun a narrow road

language / 'læŋɡwɪdʒ / noun the words used by a group of people or the people of a country

lantern / 'læntə(r)n / noun a light that can be carried around

last / lɑːst / verb to continue for some time • *The film **lasted** for two hours.*

last / lɑːst / adjective the final one after all the others • *This is our **last** lesson this term.*

last / lɑːst / adverb after all the others • *Ben was annoyed because he came **last** in the race. **at last**, after a long time, in the end The journey was long but **at last** we got there.*

late / leɪt / adverb after the expected time • *If you arrive **late** at school your teacher will be cross.*

laugh / lɑːf / verb to make sounds with your voice because something is funny • *Sam is good at telling jokes and he always makes us **laugh**.*

launch / lɔːntʃ / noun the start of something • *The **launch** of the new TV channel is tomorrow.*

lava / 'lɑːvə / noun the hot rock that flows out of a volcano

law / lɔː / noun a rule that everyone must obey • *It is against the **law** to drive fast in the city.*

legend

lay / leɪ / verb to make an egg • *Birds **lay** their eggs in nests.*

lazy / 'leɪzi / adjective not liking work • *Dan is a **lazy** boy and he never does his homework.*

lead / liːd / verb to go first and show the way to others • *The fireman **led** the people out of the building.*

lead / liːd / noun the position in front of all the others • *Halfway through the ten kilometre race, Ben was in the **lead**.*

leaf / liːf / noun the flat thin shape that is usually green and grows on a plant or tree

leaflet / 'liːflət / noun a piece of paper that gives you simple information about a place or activity and which often has pictures • *This **leaflet** says that there is a new exhibition at the museum.*

lean / liːn / verb to bend over a little • *The nurse **leaned** over the bed to hear what the old lady said.*

leap / liːp / verb to jump high

learn / lɜː(r)n / verb

1 to get knowledge about something • *We are **learning** about plants in science.*

2 to become skilful at something • *My cousin is **learning** Spanish.*

leather / 'leðə(r) / noun a material made from animal skin and used for shoes and bags

leave / liːv / verb

1 to forget to take something with you • *Oh no! I've **left** my school bag on the bus.*

2 to go away from a place • *We **left** home early and went to the airport.*

leave (someone or something) alone

1 to not touch or change something • *Your picture is good so you should **leave it alone** now.*

2 to keep away from someone or something • *Sam was in a bad temper so we decided to **leave him alone**.*

left / left / noun the side of your body to the west when you are facing north

leg / leg / noun one of the parts of your body that you use to walk with

legend / 'ledʒ(ə)nd / noun a story that comes from an event from the past, though not always true • *There are many **legends** about kings and princes.*

LI

lemon

lemon / 'lemən / noun a bitter yellow fruit

lemonade / ,lemə'neɪd / noun a drink made from lemons, sugar and water

lend / lend / verb to let someone use something of yours for a short time • *Ben lent a CD to Sam.*

lens / lenz / noun

1 a thin piece of curved glass or plastic • *There is a special lens in a telescope that makes objects look larger.*

2 the part of the eye that bends light to produce an image on the retina

lesson / 'les(ə)n / noun a period of time in school when you learn a subject

let / let / verb to allow • *Dad doesn't let us travel in the car without our seat belts done up.*

lettuce / 'letɪs / noun a green leafy vegetable that you eat fresh in a salad

lid / lɪd / noun the cover of a pan or box

LI

lie / laɪ / verb

1 to be flat on a surface • *Sam lies in bed for ages at the weekend. The book was lying on the table.*

2 to say something that is not true • *Jack said he didn't break the window but he lied because we saw him do it.*

lie / laɪ / noun to say or write something that is not true • *People who tell lies often don't have many friends.*

life / laɪf / noun the time that something or someone is living • *Grandfather was an archaeologist and he had a very interesting life.*

lifeguard / 'laɪfɡɑː(r)d / noun a person who watches swimmers at the pool or at the beach and helps anyone who has difficulties

lifejacket / 'laɪf,dʒækɪt / noun a jacket with air inside it that is worn round the body to help a person to float in water • *Always wear a lifejacket when you do water sports.*

lift / lɪft / noun a machine like a large box that carries a small group of people up and down to the different levels of a tall building

lift / lɪft / verb

1 to raise and hold something • *The man lifted the box off the back of the lorry.*

2 to raise something to a higher position • *Dad lifted my little brother so he could see the toys in the shop window.*

link

phrasal verb **lift off** to rise up and leave the ground in flight • *With a great roar of its engines, the rocket began to lift off.*

light / laɪt / adjective

1 not heavy and easily lifted • *A bird's feather is very light.*

2 full of brightness • *The room was light because the sun was shining in through the window.*

light / laɪt / noun a piece of electrical equipment that produces brightness • *Turn off the lights when you leave the room.*

light / laɪt / verb to make alight • *We must light the candles because there is no electricity.*
phrasal verb **light up** to throw light onto • *Some city buildings are lit up at night so that everyone can see them.*

lightning / 'laɪtnɪŋ / noun flashes of electricity that are seen in the sky during a storm

like / laɪk / verb to think that someone or something is nice, enjoyable or attractive • *Ben likes chocolate. Sam likes football. I like my new jeans and I think they look great.*

like / laɪk / preposition

1 similar to something or someone else • *The giant's footsteps sounded like thunder.*

2 such as, for example • *You can see small creatures in the forest, like frogs and butterflies.*

likeable / 'laɪkəb(ə)l / adjective very easy to like • *Ben is a very likeable boy and he has lots of friends.*

lily / 'lɪli / noun a kind of flower

limit / 'lɪmɪt / noun the most that is possible or allowed • *The speed limit in the town is 50 kilometres per hour. There is a limit to the amount that one person can carry.*

limousine / ,lɪmə'ziːn / noun a large, comfortable, expensive car

line / laɪn / noun

1 a long, thin mark • *Use your ruler to draw a line 6 centimetres long.*

2 a row of things or people • *The children were standing in a line outside the classroom.*

in-line skates / ,ɪnlaɪn 'skeɪts / noun skates that have a row of wheels in a line on the bottom

link / lɪŋk / noun something that joins one thing to another • *The pyramids are a link with ancient history.*

link

link / lɪŋk / verb to join two things with something • *The Channel Tunnel **links** England with the rest of Europe.*

lion / 'laɪən / noun a wild African and Indian animal like a very large cat that hunts

list / lɪst / noun a set of things that are written one below another for a reason • *Could you write 'tomatoes' on the shopping **list**, please? The teacher had a **list** of students who were going on the trip.*

listen / 'lɪs(ə)n / verb to use your ears to hear sounds or voices

little / 'lɪt(ə)l / adjective

1 small • *An ant is a **little** insect.*

2 young • *My **little** brother is learning to write.*

live / lɪv / verb

1 to have a house or apartment somewhere • *We **live** in the city centre.*

2 to be alive • *Elephants **live** in Africa and Asia.*

lively / 'laɪvli / adjective active and interesting • *Ben gave a **lively** talk about keeping fish.*

loads / laʊdz / noun (plural) a large amount • *My cousin has **loads** of sugar in his coffee – at least four spoonfuls!*

local / 'ləʊk(ə)l / adjective in the nearby area • *We can buy everything we need at our **local** shops.*

location / laʊ'keɪʃ(ə)n / noun place • *This valley is the exact **location** of a famous battle which happened 200 years ago.*

lock / lɒk / verb to turn the key in a door or box to stop it being opened • *Mum **locked** the door when we left home.*

log / lɒg / noun a large, thick, round piece of wood from a tree

lollipop / 'lɒli,pɒp / noun a sweet on a small stick

lonely / 'ləʊnli / adjective feeling sad because of being left on your own • *Kitty was **lonely** when her best friend moved away.*

long / lɒŋ / adjective measuring a lot from one end to the other • *It takes ten minutes to drive through this **long** tunnel. **long-time**, continuing over a long period of time Joe is Ben's **long-time** friend, since kindergarten, in fact. **long hours**, a lot of hours of the day Dad works **long hours** so we only see him at the weekend. **no longer**, not*

love

anymore *This building is **no longer** a factory, it's a sports club now.*

look / lʊk / verb to direct your eyes towards something • ***Look at that amazing car!***
phrasal verbs

1 **look after** to care for • *Mum **looks after** the flowers in our garden and she waters them every day.*

2 **look for** to search • *Mum dropped her earring on the floor and we all had to **look for** it.*

3 **look forward to** to think about a future event with a good feeling • *I am **looking forward to** our holiday in Spain.*

4 **look into** to discover the facts about something • *The traffic police are **looking into** the cause of the accident.*

5 **look like** to have an appearance the same as something else • *This jellyfish **looks like** a spaceship.*

6 **look up** to find a piece of information or a fact • *If you want to know about something you can easily **look it up** on the internet.*

look / lʊk / noun how a person appears because of his clothes or actions • *That man with the orange and green hat has a very strange **look**.*

lorry / 'lɒri / noun a large vehicle for taking a lot of goods from one place to another

lose / luːz / verb

1 to not have any longer • *I **lost** my pen somewhere in the playground so I had to buy another one.*

2 to not win • *When I play chess with Ben I always **lose** the game which is very annoying.*

loud / laʊd / adjective making a lot of sound • *My dad has a very **loud** voice.*

loudly / 'laʊdli / adverb with a lot of sound • *Ben played his trumpet so **loudly** that Dad told him to stop.*

lovable / 'lʌvəb(ə)l / adjective very easy to love a lot • *My baby sister is always smiling and she's so **lovable**.*

love / lʌv / noun strong feelings of liking someone or something • *Nina's **love** of music comes from her uncle, a famous violinist.*

love / lʌv / verb to have strong feelings of liking someone or something very much • *Grandma **loves** all her grandchildren.*

lovely

lovely / 'lʌvli / adjective beautiful, nice • We gave Mum a **lovely** bunch of flowers.

lower / 'ləʊə(r) / verb to move something downwards • The crane **lowered** the big box onto the lorry.

luck / lʌk / noun a good thing that happens by chance • We saw the football match by **luck** because my uncle was ill so he gave us his tickets.

lucky / 'lʌki / adjective having good things often happening • Ben is **lucky**. He won a computer in a competition and next week he is going to London.

luggage / 'lʌɡɪdʒ / noun the bags and suitcases that passengers carry when travelling

lump / lʌmp / noun a big piece of something • Mum put a **lump** of sugar in her tea.

lunch / lʌntʃ / noun the meal eaten in the middle of the day

lynx / lɪŋks / noun a wild animal like a very large cat

Mm

Mm

machine / mə'ʃi:n / noun a piece of equipment with moving parts that does a particular job and works by power such as electricity, water or steam

mad / mæd / adjective very silly or stupid • You'll think I'm a bit **mad** but I've decided to give up chocolate for a year. **like mad**, very quickly and with a lot of effort We had to work **like mad** to get our project finished.

magazine / ,mægə'zi:n / noun a booklet with a lot of pages with photos and pictures, and lots of different articles that is printed every month or every week • Dad's favourite **magazine** is about cars.

magic / 'mædʒɪk / adjective special, making something unusual happen without explanation • My uncle's best **magic** trick is when he pulls a huge bunch of flowers from his hat.

magical / 'mædʒɪk(ə)l / adjective attractive and amazing • The wonderful ballet had **magical** scenery and costumes.

magnificent / mæg'nɪfɪs(ə)nt / adjective very wonderful, excellent • Ben felt proud when his teacher said that his project was **magnificent**.

marvellous

maid / meɪd / noun a woman servant who looks after the house • Grandma's **maid** brushes the steps every morning.

mail / meɪl / noun letters and parcels that are sent to people's addresses

make / meɪk / verb to create or produce something

male / meɪl / noun a person or animal that does not give birth to babies • Look at these lions – the **male** has a huge mane of hair round its head and neck.

mall / mɔ:l / noun a very large building with lots of shops in it

mammal / 'mæm(ə)l / noun an animal with hair or fur that is born from its mother's body and drinks its mother's milk as a baby • Cats have kittens and dogs have puppies but a hen is not a **mammal** because it lays an egg and the chick grows in the egg.

man / mæn / noun an adult male person

manager / 'mænɪdʒə(r) / noun the person who organises groups, events and teams • The **manager** of the band arranged the next concert.

map / mæp / noun a drawing of land that shows where things are • This **map** shows the river, the lakes and the forests as well as the roads.

marble / 'mɑ:(r)b(ə)l / noun a shiny rock with different colours • Artists make statues from **marble** and builders make floors and steps.

marriage / 'mærɪdʒ / noun the joining together of a man and woman as husband and wife • The **marriage** of my cousin was a beautiful and happy event.

marry / 'mæri / verb to take someone as your husband or wife • My uncle **married** a nurse.

Mars / mɑ:(r)z / noun the planet fourth from the sun between earth and Jupiter

marvel / 'mɑ:(r)v(ə)l / noun something wonderful and surprising • It's a **marvel** that Lucy passed her piano exam because she hardly ever practises.

marvellous / 'mɑ:(r)vələs / adjective extremely enjoyable and impressive • The opera singer's performance was **marvellous** and the audience clapped for ages.

mask

mask / mɑːsk / noun something you wear to cover all or part of your face or to make you look like a character in a play

massive / 'mæsɪv / adjective very big • *The Egyptian pyramids are massive.*

mast / mɑːst / noun the tall round piece of wood in the middle of a boat that holds the sails • *The sailor climbed up the mast to mend the sail.*

mat / mæt / noun a small thick piece of cloth that is put on the floor to protect it or for decoration

match / mætʃ / noun

1 the event when two teams play a game against each other • *The Red team won the match against the Blue team.*

2 the small stick that burns when the top is struck against the side of the box it comes in • *Open the box and strike a match then you can light the fire.*

match / mætʃ / verb to put two or more things together that are the same

material / mə'tɪəriəl / noun

1 cloth • *Grandma's new dress is made of green and blue material.*

2 things that are used to make objects • *Wood, glass and metal are good materials for buildings.*

mathematics / ,mæθə'mætɪks / noun the study of numbers and shapes to measure and describe objects

maths / mæθs / noun short form of 'mathematics'

matter / 'mætə(r) / noun subject, topic or idea • *Climate change is a matter that people discuss more and more often.*

mayonnaise / ,meɪə'neɪz / noun a sauce made of eggs and oil

mayor / meə(r) / noun an important person who leads the people in a town or city

mean / miːn / verb to express an idea in words or pictures • *This sign has a red line across it. What does it mean?*

meaning / 'miːnɪŋ / noun the sense of a word or sentence • *If you don't know the meaning of a word, find it in your dictionary.*

mend

meanwhile / 'miːnwaɪl / adverb at the same time • *Sam was playing football and meanwhile, Anna was doing her homework.*

measurement / 'meʒə(r)mənt / noun the figure that tells you the length, weight or height of something • *We took measurements carefully in our science experiment.*

meat / mi:t / noun the flesh of an animal or bird eaten for food

medal / 'med(ə)l / noun a flat round piece of metal, often gold, silver or bronze, that is given to a competition winner

medicine / 'med(ə)s(ə)n / noun

1 the study of illness and treatment • *My cousin is a student of medicine at the university.*

2 a liquid that is given to people when they are ill to make them feel better • *Some medicines taste horrible!*

medium / 'miːdiəm / adjective between large and small in size and amount

meet / mi:t / verb to be in the same place and talk to someone • *We met Aunt Julie at the mall and had lunch together.*

meeting / 'miːtɪŋ / noun an event when a number of people come together to talk about something for a reason • *At break there was a meeting of the football team to discuss the final match.*

melon / 'melən / noun a large, round very sweet fruit

melt / melt / verb to become liquid because of heat • *The ice on the pond melted when the sun came up.*

member / 'membə(r) / noun a person who has joined a particular group • *Sam is a member of the swimming club. members-only, just for members and no one else I'm afraid this is a members-only club so you can't come in.*

membership / 'membə(r)ʃɪp / noun being a member of a group • *Dad has to pay a lot of money for our membership of the sports club.*

memory / 'mem(ə)ri / noun something you remember • *I have no memory of my grandmother who died when I was one year old.*

mend / mend / verb to fix something that is broken or damaged

Mm

mercy

mercy / 'mɜ:(r)si / noun kindness shown by somebody who has the power to punish • *The king showed **mercy** to the poor thief and let him go.*

mess / mes / noun an untidy sight • *Mum was cross because Anna's room was a **mess**.*

message / 'mesɪdʒ / noun information that one person sends to another person • *People often send text **messages** on their mobile phones.*

messenger / 'mes(ə)ndʒə(r) / noun the person who carries a message • *A long time ago **messengers** often had to travel a long way.*

metal / 'met(ə)l / noun a hard material that is used to make tools, machines, jewellery, etc. • *Iron and gold are different kinds of **metal**.*

metal / 'met(ə)l / adjective made of metal • *There are several different **metal** pans in the kitchen.*

method / 'meθəd / noun a way of doing something • *Our maths teacher showed us the best **method** of dividing a circle.*

metre / 'mɪtə(r) / noun a measurement of 100 centimetres

Mm

mice / maɪs / noun plural of 'mouse'

microphone / 'maɪkrəˌfəʊn / noun a machine that you speak into to record sound or make your voice louder

microscope / 'maɪkrəˌskəʊp / noun an instrument that makes objects look larger so they can be studied closely • *Doctors can see germs when they look at them through a **microscope**.*

middle / 'mɪd(ə)l / noun centre point in time or place • *I'm in the **middle** of doing my homework so I don't want to chat now. The football was put on the spot in the **middle** of the pitch. **middle-sized**, not large or small*

midnight / 'mɪdˌnaɪt / noun 12 o'clock at night

milk / mɪlk / noun the liquid that is produced by mammals to feed their babies

million / 'mɪljən / noun 1,000,000

minced beef / ,mɪnst 'bi:f / noun beef that has been cut into tiny pieces

mind / maɪnd / verb to care about something • *I don't **mind** if you borrow my pen but I do mind if you don't give it back. **mind out**, be careful, often*

modest

given as a warning **Mind out!** *That rock is about to fall down on you!*

mingle / 'mɪŋɡ(ə)l / verb to mix in with • *The teachers **mingled** with the parents after the school play.*

mining / 'maɪnɪŋ / noun the activity of getting useful materials out of the ground such as gold, iron or jewels

minute / 'mɪnɪt / noun 60 seconds • *There are 60 **minutes** in one hour.*

mirror / 'mɪrə(r) / noun a flat shiny object that reflects images and people use for looking at themselves in

miss / mɪs / verb

1 to fail to take part in something or to be at an event • *Sam **missed** the football game because he had to do his homework.*

2 be sad without someone or something • *I **miss** my dad when he's away from home.*

missing / 'mɪsɪŋ / adjective gone, not present • *Ben was **missing** from school today because he's ill. The police found the **missing** car.*

mission / 'mɪʃ(ə)n / noun an important aim or work • *Helping poor people was Henry's **mission** in life.*

mistake / mɪ'steɪk / noun something done wrongly • *There were two **mistakes** in Ben's maths homework and he had to correct them.*

mix / mɪks / verb to put different things together and make something new • *You can **mix** red and blue paint, then you have purple paint.*

mixture / 'mɪkstʃə(r) / noun different things that someone put together • *This cake **mixture** has a lot of eggs in it.*

mobile / 'məʊbaɪl / adjective easily moved • *My cousin has a **mobile** drinks stall so he takes it to the most popular places in town. **mobile phone**, a small object for making and receiving telephone calls that can be taken anywhere*

modern / 'mɒdə(r)n / adjective of the present time

modest / 'mɒdɪst / adjective not too proud of what you can do or have done • *Andy saved a child from drowning in the lake but when he was interviewed on TV he was very **modest**. He said, "I'm not really brave, I just wanted to help."*

modestly

modestly / 'mɒdɪstli / adverb without showing pride • *The professor accepted the prize **modestly** and said that many people had helped him in his career.*

moment / 'mɒmənt / noun a very short time • *Hurry! The train will leave in a **moment**.*

money / 'meni / noun the coins and paper notes you use to pay for things with
moneybox, a small box for keeping money in

monkey / 'mʌŋki / noun an animal with two arms, two legs and a long tail that lives in trees in hot countries

monster / 'mɒnstə(r) / noun a very ugly creature • *My little sister was scared of the **monster** in the film we watched.*

moon / mu:n / noun the object that goes round the earth and you see in the sky at night

moral / 'mɒrəl / noun a sentence that tells you what a story means and which teaches you something • *The **moral** of 'The hare and the tortoise' shows you that people who begin by doing things quickly do not always finish first.*

morning / 'mɔ:(r)niŋ / noun the early part of the day

mostly / 'mɔ:(s)li / adverb most of the time, most often • *Sam **mostly** wears glasses but he takes them off for sports.*

mother / 'mʌðə(r) / noun the female parent of a child

motherhood / 'mʌðə(r)hʊd / noun the time of being a mother • *Auntie Sue has eight children and she enjoys her **motherhood**.*

motivate / 'mɒtɪveɪt / verb to get someone interested and excited about something • *The teacher **motivated** the class by showing an amazing film about volcanoes.*

motivation / ,mɒtɪ'veɪʃ(ə)n / noun a feeling of strong interest in doing something • *The students have a lot of **motivation** to do well in their exams.*

motorbike / 'mɒtə(r)baɪk / noun a large, noisy bike with a large motor that runs on petrol

mound / maʊnd / noun heap • *There were **mounds** of tomatoes and onions on the market stall.*

mouse / maʊs / noun
1 a very small furry animal with a long tail • *Mum screams if she sees a **mouse**.*

must

2 the object that can be attached to a computer to control actions on the screen

moustache / mə'sta:ʃ / noun the hair that some men grow on their upper lip

mouth / maʊθ / noun

- 1 the opening in your face where you take in food and which you use to speak
- 2 the point where a river meets the sea
- 3 the opening of a cave

move / mu:v / verb to go from one place to another • *When the head teacher finished speaking, the students **moved** out of the hall.*

movement / 'mu:vmənt / noun the act of moving • *The old man's **movements** were slow and weak.*

movie / 'mu:vi / noun the American word for 'film'

much / mʌtʃ / adverb a lot • *There isn't **much** juice in the jug. There was **much** celebration when the explorers returned safely.*

mud / mʌd / noun wet earth • *Please clean the **mud** off your shoes before you come in.*

mug / mʌg / noun a container with a handle for drinking out of

Mum / mʌm / noun the informal name for a mother

munch / mʌntʃ / verb (informal when referring to people) to eat • *The horse was quietly **munching** the grass. The children **munched** their sandwiches hungrily.*

muscle / 'mas(ə)l / noun a part of the body under the skin that helps you to move your arms, legs and perform other actions

museum / mju:'zi:əm / noun a building where important objects from the past are kept for people to look at

music / 'mju:zɪk / noun the sounds made by instruments such as a piano or violin

musical / 'mju:zɪk(ə)l / adjective of or to do with music • *There is **musical** entertainment in the park this weekend.*

musician / mju:'zɪʃ(ə)n / noun a person who plays a musical instrument

must / mʌst / modal verb have to, necessary to do • *You **must** do your homework every day.*

Mm

mutter

mutter / 'mʌtə(r) / verb to speak in a quiet, low voice often not wishing to be heard well • *The man **muttered** crossly when the policeman stopped him for speeding.*

mysterious / mi'stəriəs / adjective strange, odd • *The **mysterious** house had a high wall round it and no one ever visited it.*

mystery / 'mistiəri / noun an event that is unclear or cannot be explained • *How the window was broken is a **mystery** as everyone says they were somewhere else at the time.*

Nn

nail / neil / noun a short thin piece of metal that is flat at one end and pointed at the other end and is used to fix pieces of wood together

nail / neil / verb to fix with a nail • *The carpenter **nailed** a new board onto the floor.*

narrow / 'nærou / adjective having a short distance from one side to the other • *The passage to the cave was so **narrow** we could only just get through.*

Nn

nation / 'neiʃ(ə)n / noun all the people who live in a country or a part of the world • *The Italian **nation** are great singers.*

national / 'næʃ(ə)nəl / adjective belonging to a nation • *The **national** flag of France is red, white and blue.*

native / 'neitiv / adjective belonging to a place • *The **native** people of Peru are called Indians.*

natural / 'nætʃ(ə)rəl / adjective part of nature and not made by people • *Young lions play at fighting each other and this is **natural** behaviour. This lake is **natural** and it formed after the Ice Age.*

nature / 'neitʃə(r) / noun all living things and all the parts of the earth, both the land and the sea

naughty / 'nɔ:ti / adjective bad, not behaving in a good way • *My little brother hit my sister which was very **naughty**.*

near / niə(r) / preposition close to • *Your eyes are **near** your nose.*

near / niə(r) / adverb close • *The fire is hot so don't go too **near**.*

never-ending

nearby / ,niə(r)'baɪ / adverb near, not far from • *We live **next** to the park and my uncle lives **nearby**.*

nearly / 'niə(r)li / adverb almost • *I've **nearly** finished my project and I just need to write one more paragraph.*

neat / ni:t / adjective everything clean and in the right place • *Nina's room is always **neat** and Mum never has to tell her to tidy it.*

neck / nek / noun the part of your body that holds up your head • *A giraffe has a very long **neck**.*

need / ni:d / verb to want something because it is necessary • *I'm thirsty. I **need** a drink.*

needle / 'ni:d(ə)l / noun the long, thin, very sharp piece of metal used for sewing

neighbour / 'neiə(r) / noun a person who lives next to you or near you • *Mum does the shopping for our **neighbour** because she is ill.*

neighbourhood / 'neiə(r)'hʊd / noun a particular area of a town • *The houses in this **neighbourhood** are expensive.*

nephew / 'nefju: / noun a boy child of your brother or sister • *My sister has had a baby boy so now I have a **nephew**.*

nerve / nɜ:(r)v / noun one of the groups of fibres in your body that carry messages to and from your brain • *If you touch something hot, the **nerves** in your hand send a message to your brain, which then tells you to take your hand away.*

nervous / 'nɜ:(r)vəs / adjective worried, unsure and a little scared • *Ben is always **nervous** before a school test.*

nest / nest / noun the small round object made by birds from leaves and twigs to lay their eggs in

net / net / noun a loose material made from string or rope that is used to catch things • *The fishermen threw their **nets** into the sea.*

never / 'nevə(r) / adverb not at any time • *You must **never** put your hand in the fire.*

never-ending / ,nevə'endiŋ / adjective without end • *The road through the desert went on for many kilometres and seemed to be **never-ending**.*

new

new /nju:/ adjective

1 just made • *Have you seen the **new** film?*

2 just bought • *Do you like my **new** shoes?*

newborn /'nju:bɔ:(r)n/ adjective born a short time ago • *My cousin's **newborn** baby weighs three kilograms.*

newspaper /'nju:z,peɪpə(r)/ noun a set of large printed sheets of folded paper containing news, articles and other information that is printed every day or every week

next /nekst/ adverb

1 afterwards • *The clown picked up the bucket and we all knew what he would do **next**.*

2 following after • *Ben walked into the classroom first and Joe came **next**.*

next /nekst/ adjective the one coming after • *On Monday it was sunny but the **next** day, Tuesday, was rainy all day.*

next (to) /'nekst(tu)/ preposition beside, close to • *Most students like to sit **next to** their friends in class.*

nice /naɪs/ adjective pleasing, good • *This dress is very **nice**. Can we buy it, please?*

niece /ni:s/ noun a girl child of your brother or sister • *My brother's little girl is my only **niece**.*

nod /nɒd/ verb to raise your head up and down in agreement • *I asked Dad if I could use his computer and he **nodded** so I started playing games.*

noise /nɔɪz/ noun sound • *The **noise** of a plane taking off made it impossible to speak. Don't make a **noise** while Dad's sleeping.*

noisy /'nɔɪzi/ adjective making lots of loud sounds

nomad /'nəʊmæd/ noun someone who does not live in one place but moves from one place to another during the year with all their belongings

nonsense /'nɒns(ə)ns/ noun ideas that do not make sense and are not understandable • *Ben said he dreamed about a cow that could talk, fly and use a computer. What a lot of **nonsense**!*

normal /'nɔ:(r)m(ə)l/ adjective usual • *Our **normal** way of going to school is by bus.*

normally /'nɔ:(r)m(ə)li/ adverb usually • *We **normally** start school at 8 am.*

oasis

north /nɔ:(r)θ/ noun the direction you are facing when the rising sun is on your right

northern /'nɔ:(r)ðə(r)n/ adjective of the north part • *The people of **northern** Europe often have fair hair.*

nose /nəʊz/ noun the part of your body in the middle of your face through which you breathe

note /nəʊt/ noun

1 paper money • *Anna has several coins and a lot of **notes** in her moneybox.*

2 a piece of information written in a few words • *Ben wrote **notes** about the fish then he made the **notes** into complete sentences.*

nothing /'nʌθɪŋ/ pronoun not a thing • *They opened the old box but there was **nothing** in it.*

notice /'nəʊtɪs/ verb to become conscious of someone or something by seeing, hearing or feeling them • *After a while, Ben **noticed** that the little boy was crying.*

noticeable /'nəʊtɪsəb(ə)l/ adjective can easily be noticed • *This bowl has been repaired but it's not at all **noticeable**.*

now /naʊ/ adverb at this moment • *We must leave **now** or we will miss the train.*

nowadays /'naʊədeɪz/ adverb in modern times • ***Nowadays**, many people drive cars.*

nurse /nɜ:(r)s/ noun a person who looks after patients in hospital

nurse /nɜ:(r)s/ verb to look after someone who is ill or has an injury • *Mum **nursed** Grandma when she broke her leg.*

nut /nʌt/ noun a fruit that is hard outside and has a softer part inside that you can eat

nutcracker /'nʌt,krækə(r)/ noun a small tool for breaking open a nut

nutty /'nʌti/ adjective tasting or smelling of nuts or having nuts in • *I don't like **nutty** chocolate but I love **nutty** ice cream.*

oasis /əʊ'eɪsɪs/ noun (plural: oases) a place in a desert where there is water • *Trees often grow around an **oasis** because there is enough water for them.*

Oo

Oo

obedience

obedience / ə'bi:diəns / noun doing what you are told • *Our teacher expects **obedience** from everyone in the class.*

obey / ə'beɪ / verb to follow instructions and to do what you are told • *If you join a club it is important to **obey** the rules.*

object / 'ɒbdʒekt / noun thing • *This **object** with gold decoration is very valuable.*

observe / əb'zɜ:(r)v / verb to look at something carefully • *The doctor **observed** the sick child for a few moments then he called for an ambulance.*

obvious / 'ɒbvɪəs / adjective clear, certain • *Anna had spots on her face so her illness was **obvious**.*

occasion / ə'keɪʒ(ə)n / noun a particular time or event • *Grandma's 80th birthday was a special **occasion**.*

occupy / 'ɒkjupaɪ / verb to live in • *My family has **occupied** this house for more than 50 years.*

ocean / 'əʊʃ(ə)n / noun the large areas of water between the continents

octopus / 'ɒktəpəs / noun a sea creature with eight tentacles

off / ɒf / adverb less • *This £2 book is 50% **off** so you only pay £1.*

Oo

official / ə'fɪʃ(ə)l / adjective decided or done by public leaders such as the government • *The prime minister made an **official** visit to Canada.*

often / 'ɒf(ə)n / adverb a lot of times • *We **often** visit my cousins and we usually go every Saturday.*

oil / ɔɪ / noun

1 a black liquid that is found deep in the ground that is used to run machines and to make plastic

2 the thick liquid that is made from pressing fruits, seeds and nuts and which is used in cooking and making food

oily / 'ɔɪli / adjective with oil • *Our gardener cleans his tools with an **oily** cloth.*

old / əʊld / adjective having lived or existed for a long time • *My grandmother is very **old**. These **old** shoes have holes in.*

olive oil / ɒlɪv 'ɔɪl / noun oil from olives

opposite

Olympic / ə'lɪmpɪk / adjective of or from the Olympic Games • ***Olympic** competitors are proud to represent their countries.*

Olympic Games / ə'lɪmpɪk 'geɪmz / noun a sports competition that takes place every four years and which most countries in the world enter

Olympics / ə'lɪmpɪks / noun short form of 'Olympic Games'

once / wʌns / adverb one time • *You will only do this test **once** so make sure you revise well. **once upon a time**, a long time ago (a traditional opening to an old story) **Once upon a time** a prince lived in a castle. **at once**, now, immediately*

only / 'əʊnli / adverb no one or nothing else, just the thing named • *There was **only** one person on the bus. They **only** keep sheep on this farm.*

open / 'əʊpən / verb

1 to move the lid or top of something so you can look inside • *Let's **open** the box and see what's in it.*

2 to move something so you can pass through • *Please **open** the door so we can go into the classroom.*

opera / 'ɒp(ə)rə / noun a theatre performance where the characters sing their parts and an orchestra plays the music

operate / 'ɒpəreɪt / verb

1 to use something and make it work • *The notice said 'To **operate** this lift, press the red button'.*

2 to do work on the inside of a patient's body • *The doctor will **operate** to repair this patient's heart.*

operation / ,ɒpə'reɪʃ(ə)n / noun the act of opening a patient's body to treat disease or damage • *Nina broke her arm and the doctor did an **operation** to repair the bones.*

opinion / ə'pɪnjən / noun a person's own ideas about something • *In my **opinion**, school holidays are too short. In my dad's **opinion**, they are too long!*

opponent / ə'pəʊnənt / noun the person or team you are playing against • *My **opponent** in the chess competition was really good and I lost!*

opportunity / ,ɒpə(r)'tju:nəti / noun a chance to do something • *Many people would love the **opportunity** to travel round the world.*

opposite / 'ɒpəzɪt / adjective completely different • *'Big' and 'small' have **opposite** meanings.*

opposite

opposite / 'ɒpəzɪt / preposition across from •
The station is **opposite** the museum.

optic / 'ɒptɪk / adjective to do with the eye

optician / ɒp'tɪʃ(ə)n / noun the person who examines your eyes and gives you glasses if you need them

orange / 'ɒrɪndʒ / noun a round sweet fruit that is orange in colour

orange juice / 'ɒrɪndʒ dʒu:s / noun the liquid that comes from an orange

orbit / 'ɔ:(r)ɪt / noun the journey of an object going round a planet or star • The spacecraft did two **orbits** of the earth.

orchestra / 'ɔ:(r)kɪstrə / noun a group of people who play music together using lots of different instruments • The school **orchestra** has two trumpet players and ten violin players.

order / 'ɔ:(r)də(r) / noun

1 the way a set of things is arranged • The children's names should be in alphabetical **order**.

2 a command • The emperor gave the **order** to attack the city.

order / 'ɔ:(r)də(r) / verb

1 to tell someone they must do something • The policeman **ordered** the driver of the car to get out.

2 to ask for something in a restaurant • We **ordered** salad and orange juice for our lunch.

ordinary / 'ɔ:(r)d(ə)n(ə)rɪ / adjective normal, not different to others • On an **ordinary** school day we have lessons but sometimes we have plays and concerts.

organisation / ,ɔ:(r)ɡənə'zeɪʃ(ə)n / noun a group of people who work together to do things • My aunt works for an **organisation** that helps blind people.

organise / 'ɔ:(r)ɡənaɪz / verb

1 to make plans for something to happen • Our teacher is **organising** a sports competition.

2 to put neatly or in order • You must **organise** your notes before you write your essay.

original / ə'rɪdʒ(ə)nəl / adjective the first true one • This picture is a copy of a painting and the **original** painting is in the National Gallery.

other / 'ʌðə(r) / adjective the different one • I don't want that game, I want the **other** one.

padlock

ouch / aʊʃ / interjection a word that you say when you hurt yourself a little • "**Ouch!**" said Anna when she cut herself.

outside / ,aʊt'saɪd / adverb not in a room or building • It's sunny today so let's play **outside**.

outside / ,aʊt'saɪd / preposition out of a place • There was a taxi **outside** the station.

oven / 'ʌv(ə)n / noun a large piece of kitchen equipment that you use to cook food • The **oven** gets very hot so be careful when you open the door and take the food out.

over / 'əʊvə(r) / adverb

1 finished, at the end • When the play was **over**, everyone clapped and cheered.

2 downwards • Ben touched the vase and it fell **over**.

over / 'əʊvə(r) / preposition

1 to the other side • Ben jumped **over** the wall.

2 above • The clock was **over** the door.

own / əʊn / verb to have something • My cousin **owns** a small hotel.

own / əʊn / adjective belonging to someone • Ben used his **own** ideas to write his story. **on one's own**, alone I can't lift this box **on my own** so can you help me, please?

Pp

pace / peɪs / verb walk with strong footsteps • The guards **paced** up and down outside the palace.

pace / peɪs / noun

1 the length you go when you take one step forwards • He crossed the courtyard in 20 **paces**.

2 speed • The racing cars went round the track at an amazing **pace**.

pack / pæk / verb to put things in a bag to take with you when you go to stay somewhere else • I forgot to **pack** my toothbrush so I had to buy one at the hotel.

phrasal verb **pack up** to put things away into a bag or box • The students **packed up** their books at the end of the lesson.

paddle / 'pæd(ə)l / verb to move a canoe through the water using a flat piece of wood • Once you learn to **paddle**, canoeing is fun!

padlock / 'pæd,lɒk / noun a metal object that can be locked with a key and which can be

Pp

page

used to hold things together so they cannot be moved • *There was a heavy **padlock** on the doors of the museum so we knew that it was closed.*

page / peɪdʒ / noun one of the sheets of paper that make a book

pain / peɪn / noun the feeling of being hurt • *Nina had a lot of **pain** when she broke her arm.*

painkiller / 'peɪnkɪlə(r) / noun a medicine that takes pain away • *Nina was given a **painkiller** after her operation.*

paint / peɪnt / noun the coloured liquid used inside and outside buildings and to make pictures • *Mum chose a blue **paint** for the kitchen walls. Harry has lots of different coloured **paints** in a box.*

paint / peɪnt / verb
1 to spread paint with a brush • *In the square, a man was **painting** a picture of the fountain.*
2 to decorate and protect objects • *The new door was **painted** blue.*

painter / 'peɪntə(r) / noun a person who works by painting • *Dad was busy so he paid some **painters** to paint the outside walls of our house.*

painting / 'peɪntɪŋ / noun a picture that has been made with paint • *This **painting** is very old and was made by a famous artist.*

Pp

palace / 'pæləs / noun the large home of a king or queen

palm tree / 'pɑ:m 'tri: / noun a kind of tree found in hot, dry places

pan / pæn / noun a metal container for cooking or heating things in

panda / 'pændə / noun a large black and white bear that lives on bamboo mainly in China

panel / 'pæn(ə)l / noun a small group of people who make decisions • *The **panel** of teachers awarded the prize to the best student.*

pant / pænt / verb to breathe in and out fast through the mouth • *After the race, Ben was **panting** and exhausted.*

paper / 'peɪpə(r) / noun material made from wood that is used for writing on and to make books

papyrus / pə'paɪrəs / noun a tall plant used in the past to make material for writing on

pass

parachute / 'pærəʃu:t / noun a very large piece of material that fills with air and can be used to go down gently when jumping from a plane or a high place

parent / 'peərənt / noun the mother or father of a child

park / pɑ:(r)k / noun an open area of ground where there are trees and paths where people can walk, sit and play

park / pɑ:(r)k / verb to leave your car somewhere while you go and do something • *Mum **parked** in the square then we went to the dentist. **park and ride**, to leave your car in a parking area outside of the city and then catch a special bus to the centre*

parrot / 'pærət / noun a kind of bird that lives in hot countries especially in rainforest areas

parsley / 'pɑ:(r)sli / noun a kind of herb that is used in cooking

part / pɑ:(r)t / noun
1 a piece or section of something • *A large **part** of the building was damaged by fire.*
2 an area of somewhere • *I live in the southern **part** of the city.*
3 a character's role in a play • *I want to be Odysseus. Which **part** do you want to play?*

particle / 'pɑ:(r)tɪk(ə)l / noun a very tiny piece of something

particular / pɑ:(r)'tɪkjələ(r) / adjective
1 the one here • *This **particular** lion is not dangerous because it's very old.*
2 special • *Please take **particular** care over your spelling.*

in particular especially *Do you want to buy anything **in particular** when we go to the mall?*

particularly / pɑ:(r)'tɪkjələ(r)li / adverb especially • *I don't like rain, **particularly** when it's cold as well.*

partly / 'pɑ:(r)tli / adverb in part • *The clown was dressed **partly** in blue and **partly** in red.*

party / 'pɑ:(r)ti / noun a time when people come together for a special reason such as a birthday or feast day

pass / pɑ:s / verb
1 to do well enough in an exam • *Sam was pleased because he **passed** a difficult exam.*

passage

2 to go by • We **passed** the castle on the way to the station.

3 (in football) to kick the ball to another player

passage / 'pæsɪdʒ / noun

1 a long narrow part of a building that leads from one area to another • We walked along the cool, gloomy **passage** that led from the courtyard to the old prison.

2 a piece of text from a book • Please read the **passage** that starts at the top of page 6.

passengers / 'pæsɪndʒə(r)z / noun (plural) people who are travelling by train, bus, boat, taxi or plane

past / pɑːst / adverb by and away from • Strange noises were coming from the building so we quickly hurried **past**.

past / pɑːst / preposition by something • I walked **past** the park on my way to the shops.

past / pɑːst / noun the time that has already happened • In the **past**, people used horses and donkeys to travel from one place to another.

path / pɑːθ / noun a hard, firm surface for walking on

pathway / 'pɑːθ,wei / noun the route of a path • We followed the **pathway** into the castle.

patience / 'peɪʃ(ə)ns / noun

1 the ability to wait quietly for something for a long time without getting cross • We had to have **patience** at the museum because the queue of people was 100 metres long.

2 the ability to continue doing something for a long time without losing interest • Learning a musical instrument takes **patience** and time.

patient / 'peɪʃ(ə)nt / noun a person who is being treated in hospital

patient / 'peɪʃ(ə)nt / adjective

1 able to continue doing something difficult and stay calm • Jane is **patient** with small children and she's going to be a kindergarten teacher.

2 able to wait without getting annoyed or leaving • Polar bears are **patient** hunters and they watch holes in the ice for hours until a seal appears.

pattern / 'pætə(r)n / noun a repeated and regular design of shapes, lines or objects • Grandma's dress has a **pattern** of red and blue flowers on black and white squares.

penguin

pause / pɔːz / verb to stop moving or doing something for a moment before starting again • The boy **paused** at the edge of the pool then dived in.

paw / pɔː / noun the end of the leg of an animal such as a dog or cat • A cat has soft **paws** and often you can't hear it coming.

pay / peɪ / verb to give money to buy something or a piece of work • Ben **paid** a lot of money for his new computer. Grandad **paid** a man to clean his car.

payment / 'peɪmənt / noun a sum of money that is paid • Dad had to make a large **payment** when he bought our new TV.

pea / piː / noun a small round, green vegetable that grows in a pod

peace / piːs / noun a time when there is no war or fighting • Most people want to live in **peace**.

peak / piːk / noun the top of a mountain • The mountain **peaks** are covered in snow.

peculiar / pɪ'kjuːliə(r) / adjective strange, unusual • This plant is very **peculiar** because it eats insects.

pedestrian / pə'destriən / noun a person who is walking, especially in a town or city • If you are a **pedestrian**, it is safer to walk on the pavement.

peer / piə(r) / verb

1 to make an effort to look at something • Sam **peered** over the wall to see what the noise in the street was.

2 to look at something carefully and closely • The professor **peered** at the dirty old metal rod then he exclaimed, "It's a Roman sword!"

pen / pen / noun a tool containing ink that you use to write with

penalty / 'pen(ə)lti / noun

1 a punishment for breaking a rule or law

2 (in football) a shot at the goal after a foul in the penalty area

pencil / 'pens(ə)l / noun a tool that makes a grey mark you use to draw with

penguin / 'pɛŋɡwɪn / noun a small black and white bird that lives on land in the Antarctic but can swim in the sea

Pp

penknife

penknife / 'pen,naɪf / noun a knife with a blade that folds into the handle

people / 'pi:p(ə)l / noun plural of 'person'

pepper / 'pepə(r) / noun

1 a round vegetable that is green, yellow, orange or red

2 a seed that is ground to a powder and used in cooking

perch / pɜ:(r)tʃ / verb

1 to sit upright on the edge of something • We **perched** on a low wall while we waited for the bus.

2 to put something high up or on the edge of something • Her small hat was **perched** on the top of her head.

perform / pə(r)'fɔ:(r)m / verb to act or do things to entertain people as a show

performance / pə(r)'fɔ:(r)məns / noun the act of performing a play, dance or other form of entertainment • The **performance** began with a lively song.

performers / pə(r)'fɔ:(r)mə(r)z / noun (plural) actors and entertainers

perhaps / pə(r)'hæps / adverb maybe • It's very cold tonight so **perhaps** it will snow.

period / 'piəriəd / noun a length of time • a **period** of 100 years, the **period** between the wars.

Pp

person / 'pɜ:(r)s(ə)n / noun (plural: people) a single man, woman, boy or girl

persuade / pə(r)'swɛɪd / verb to make someone do, think or agree to do something • Sam **persuaded** his dad to take him to the football game.

petal / 'pet(ə)l / noun one of the coloured shapes that are part of a flower • The **petals** of this rose are pink.

petticoat / 'peti,kəʊt / noun a piece of clothing like a skirt that is sometimes worn under a girl's or woman's dress

pharaoh / 'feərəʊ / noun an ancient king of Egypt

phone / faʊn / noun short form of 'telephone', an instrument used to speak to people through a telephone line

photo / 'fəʊtəʊ / noun short form of 'photograph'

pipe

photocopier / 'fəʊtəʊ,kɒpiə(r) / noun a machine that makes copies of pages and pictures

photograph / 'fəʊtə,grɑ:f / noun a picture taken by a camera

photographer / fə'tɒgrəfə(r) / noun a person who takes photographs

piano / pi'ænəʊ / noun a musical instrument with black and white keys that you press to make sounds

pick / pik / verb to collect fruit or vegetables • The apples are ripe so we must **pick** them today.
phrasal verb **pick up** to take hold of something and lift it up • Please **pick up** the pens that have fallen on the floor.

picnic / 'pɪknɪk / noun a meal that is eaten out of doors in the countryside or an open space

picture / 'pɪktʃə(r) / noun an illustration such as a drawing, painting or photograph

piece / pi:s / noun a small part of something • Would you like a **piece** of chocolate?

pier / piə(r) / noun a support built in water • The bridge was supported by three **piers**.

pigeon / 'pi:dʒ(ə)n / noun a bird that often lives on buildings in cities

pile / paɪl / noun a group of objects put one on top of the other • There was a tall **pile** of books on the teacher's desk.

phrasal verb **pile up** / paɪlʌp / to make a pile of something • Dad **piled up** the wood he had chopped.

pilot / 'paɪlət / noun a person who flies a plane or helicopter

pin / pɪn / noun a thin sharp object for holding pieces of cloth together

pinch / pɪntʃ / verb to press something hard between your finger and thumb • Don't **pinch** my arm, it hurts!

pioneer / ,paɪə'niə(r) / noun a person who does something before other people • Christopher Columbus was an early **pioneer** of exploration.

pipe / paɪp / noun a long thin tube for carrying water, gas or oil

pitch

pitch / pitʃ / noun (in football) an area for playing a sport like football • *The players ran onto the **pitch** and everyone cheered.*

pitcher / 'pitʃə(r) / noun a large jug

pity / 'piti / noun a strong feeling of sadness about the bad situation someone is in • *My uncle gave the poor man money out of **pity** for him. It's a **pity**, it's disappointing. It's a **pity** it's raining and we can't play outside.*

pizza / 'pi:tʃə / noun a food from Italy made of a large, round, flat piece of bread with something such as vegetables and meat or cheese on top

place / pleis / noun

1 an area or position • *The archaeologists did not find the **place** where the king was buried.*

2 a town or building • *The **place** we are going to next is well-known for its daily market.*

place / pleis / verb to put something in a position • *Grandma **placed** her new vase on the table.*

plain / plein / noun large, flat areas of land • *There are thousands of farms on the North American **plains**.*

plain / plein / adjective simple, not patterned • *My cousin chose a **plain**, white dress for her wedding.*

plan / plæn / noun an idea for what to do in the future • *My **plan** for next week is to finish my project.*

plane / plein / noun an aircraft with wings and an engine

planet / 'plænit / noun one of the round objects that goes around the sun • *Earth is a **planet**.*

plank / plæŋk / noun a long flat piece of wood, often about 20 centimetres wide • *The floor of our house is made of **planks** of wood.*

plant / plɑ:nt / noun a living thing that grows in the ground or in water, often with green leaves

plastic / 'plæstik / noun a hard material that does not break easily and is used to make many different objects such as buckets, bowls, plates, etc.

plate / pleit / noun a round flat object for eating from

point

platform / 'plæt,fɔ:(r)m / noun the raised area next to a railway line where the train stops so the passengers can get on and off

play / plei / noun a story performed by actors, often in a theatre

play / plei / verb

1 to take part in a game with other people • *The boys are **playing** basketball after school today.*

2 to use toys or equipment for enjoyment • *My sister is **playing** with her dolls and my brothers are **playing** on the swings.*

3 to make sounds come from a musical instrument • *Sam is **playing** his trumpet.*

pleasant / 'plez(ə)nt / adjective enjoyable •

*We had a **pleasant** day at the beach because the weather was good and it wasn't crowded.*

pleased / pli:zd / adjective feeling happy because of something good • *Our teacher was **pleased** when we all passed the exam.*

pleasure / 'plezə(r) / noun a feeling of happiness, enjoyment or satisfaction • *It gave us a lot of **pleasure** to have our cousins staying with us.*

plenty / 'plenti / adverb a lot of • *There's **plenty** of salad so please take more.*

pliers / 'plaiə(r)z / noun a tool used for pulling out nails

plough / plau / noun a tool or machine used by farmers to turn over the soil before planting

plumber / 'plʌmə(r) / noun a person who puts pipes for water into a house and mends taps

plume / plu:m / noun a large long feather • *A bird of paradise has beautiful **plumes** in its tail.*

pocket / 'pɒkit / noun the small bag shape that is part of clothing for keeping small objects in • *Dad always has some money and a handkerchief in his **pocket**.*

pocket money / 'pɒkit ,mʌni / noun small amounts of money that children are sometimes given to save or spend

pod / pɒd / noun the long round green shape on some plants where the fruit or seeds grow **glass pod**, a small round room mostly made of glass

point / pɔint / verb to show something by holding out your arm and a finger towards it • *Ben's teacher asked him to **point** to England on the world map.*

Pp

point

point / pɔɪnt / noun a unit for counting the score in a game or sport • *We've got four **points** and the other team has three.*

Poland / 'pəʊlənd / noun a country in central Europe next to Russia

polar / 'pəʊlə(r) / adjective from or of the North Pole or the South Pole • ***Polar** exploration is difficult because of the extreme cold.*

police / pə'li:s / noun (plural) people who are policemen • *When our car was stolen, Dad phoned the **police**.*

policeman, policewoman / pə'li:smən
pə'li:s,wʊmən / noun a person who tries to catch criminals and helps to keep the law

polite / pə'laɪt / adjective behaving in a pleasant way to other people • *Ben is a **polite** boy so everyone likes him.*

politely / pə'laɪtli / adverb in a pleasant and respectful way • *Speak **politely** to your teacher and your parents.*

pollution / pə'lu:ʃ(ə)n / noun dirt in the air or rubbish and dirt on the ground or in water • *Coral reefs and the Himalayan mountains are parts of the world being damaged by **pollution**.*

pond / pɒnd / noun a small area of water in a garden or park made for keeping fish in

Pp

pool / pu:l / noun a small natural area of water • *When the sea went out there were lots of **pools** between the rocks. At the bottom of the waterfall there was a deep **pool**. **swimming pool**, a large area of deep water especially constructed for people to swim in Let's swim in the **swimming pool** at the club this afternoon.*

poor / pɔ:(r) / adjective
1 having very little money or things • *It is difficult for **poor** students to study at a university because books are expensive.*
2 unlucky • ***Poor** Ben! He has broken his arm and he is in hospital.*

popular / 'pɒpjulə(r) / adjective liked by a lot of people • *Ben is a **popular** boy and he has a lot of friends.*

population / ,pɒpjʊ'leɪʃ(ə)n / noun all the people in an area or place • *The **population** of this village is fifty. The world's **population** is 7 billion.*

power

portrait / 'pɔ:(r)trɪt / noun a picture or photo usually of a person but also of a place or region • *The new **portrait** of the queen is in the National Gallery.*

possessive / pə'zesɪv / adjective not willing to share things • *Sam is very **possessive** about his computer and won't let anyone else use it.*

possible / 'pɒsəb(ə)l / adjective able to be done • *It is **possible** to take the main road to the city but the smaller roads are quieter.*

post / pəʊst / verb
1 put up in a place where other people can see • *The notice about the meeting was **posted** outside the Town Hall.*
2 to put a letter in the postbox or send a letter or parcel to someone • *Ben **posted** the letter in the box near his house. Nina **posted** a birthday card to her cousin.*

poster / 'pəʊstə(r) / noun a large notice to tell people about something

pot / pɒt / noun a container for keeping food or liquid in

potato / pə'teɪtəʊ / noun a round brown vegetable that grows in the ground and is often made into chips

potter / 'pɒtə(r) / noun a person who makes pots

pound / paʊnd / noun English money: 100 pence • *This book costs two **pounds** and 75 pence.*

pound / paʊnd / verb to place the feet down hard when walking or running • *The runners **pounded** across the bridge towards the finishing line.*

pour / pɔ:(r) / verb
1 to let a liquid drop from a cup or jug • *Molly **poured** some juice into a glass.*
2 to rain hard • *It's **pouring** so we'll have to stay indoors.*

powder / 'paʊdə(r) / noun a soft substance like dust made of lots of tiny particles • *Mum uses fine flour that looks like white **powder** to make bread.*

powdery / 'paʊd(ə)ri / adjective like powder • *In photos, the surface of the moon looks soft and **powdery**.*

power / 'paʊə(r) / noun
1 the ability to control people and events • *The king used his **power** to help the poorest people.*

power

2 strength • An elephant can lift trees because of the **power** of its trunk.

3 energy • Nowadays, solar **power** can be used to heat buildings.

power / 'paʊə(r) / verb

1 to do something with a lot of force and strength • The runners **powered** their way up the hill.

2 to make something work • Electricity **powers** the lights in this building.

powerful / 'paʊə(r)f(ə)l / adjective strong, having a lot of power

practice / 'præktɪs / noun the act of practising • Have you done your trumpet **practice** today, Nina?

practise / 'præktɪs / verb to do something many times to make it better • Nina **practises** playing her trumpet several times a week.

precede / 'pri:si:d / verb go first • The queen **preceded** the prince in the procession.

precious / 'preʃəs / adjective very valuable • This **precious** vase is worth half a million dollars.

precisely / pri'saɪsli / adverb exactly • The train will leave at two o'clock **precisely**.

predict / pri'dɪkt / verb to work out from present evidence what is going to happen in the future • Scientists **predict** a shortage of water because of climate change.

predictable / pri'dɪktəb(ə)l / adjective can be expected beforehand • The accident was **predictable** because the traffic was going too fast.

prefer / pri'fɜ:(r) / verb to think that one thing is better than another • Ben **prefers** basketball to swimming.

prefix / 'pri:fiks / noun a group of letters that is added to the front of a word to make a new word • In the word 'impossible' the **prefix** is 'im-'.

preheat / ,pri:'hi:t / verb to heat first before doing something else

prepare / pri'peə(r) / verb to get ready or get something ready • I've **prepared** for my exams. Molly **prepared** lunch for herself and her sister.

preposition / ,prepə'zɪʃ(ə)n / noun a part of speech that tells you the position of something

present / 'prez(ə)nt / noun

1 something that is given to you, or that you give to another person, on a birthday or on a

princess

special day • My cousin received a beautiful carved table as a wedding **present**.

2 the time now • In the **present**, people are able to travel more easily than in the past.

present / pri'zent / verb to show something for people to see and think about • John **presented** his project on the planets to the class.

presentation / ,prez(ə)n'teɪʃ(ə)n / noun

1 an event in which something is shown or given • The parents watched the **presentation** of the school prizes.

2 a formal talk in which you describe or explain something to a group of people • Professor Binks gave an interesting **presentation** on renewable energy.

press / pres / verb push down • This machine gives drinks. Put in your money and **press** the button.

pretend / pri'tend / verb

1 to act • Harry **pretended** to be the teacher and he made everyone laugh.

2 to show feelings or actions that are false • When Ben said he didn't mind losing the match, he was **pretending** because he was really cross about it.

pretty / 'prɪti / adjective looking nice and attractive • I'd like to buy this dress because the material is so **pretty**.

prevent / pri'vent / verb to stop something from happening • The policeman **prevented** the boy from running into the road.

preview / 'pri:vju: / noun a presentation or performance that is seen before other people see it • Our class saw a **preview** of the school play.

previous / 'pri:vɪəs / adjective earlier, before • On Friday it was cold but on the **previous** day, which was Thursday, it was hot.

prey / preɪ / noun the living food an animal catches • Seals are the **prey** of polar bears.

price / praɪs / noun the amount something costs • The **price** of these jeans is \$20.

prime minister / ,praɪm 'mɪnɪstə(r) / noun the leader of a government

prince / prɪns / noun the son of a king or queen

princess / ,prɪn'ses / noun the daughter of a king or queen

print

print / print / verb to put words or a pattern on paper or cloth by pressing down a shape with ink on it

prison / 'prɪz(ə)n / noun a place where people who are guilty of crimes are kept

prisoner / 'prɪz(ə)nə(r) / noun a person who is kept in a prison

prize / praɪz / noun something you are given for doing well or winning at a particular activity • Anna won the **prize** for writing.

probable / 'prɒbəb(ə)l / adjective likely to happen • It is **probable** that we'll have to replace our computer because it keeps crashing.

probably / 'prɒbəbli / adverb more likely • You'll **probably** get a good mark for this essay as there are few mistakes in it.

problem / 'prɒbləm / noun something that makes trouble or makes things difficult • Too many cars is a **problem** in lots of cities.

process / 'prəʊses / noun how something begins, changes and ends • The children studied the **process** of a tadpole becoming a frog.

procession / prə'seʃ(ə)n / noun a line of people or vehicles moving together slowly • After the queen's car there was a **procession** of horses and riders.

Pp

produce / prə'dju:s / verb to make something • This factory **produces** 100 cars every week.

production / prə'dʌkʃ(ə)n / noun the process of making something • Heat is used in the **production** of iron bars.

professor / prə'fesə(r) / noun a person who teaches at a university

program / 'prəʊgræm / noun the instructions that make a computer do something • This computer **program** helps your spelling.

programme / 'prəʊgræm / noun
1 something you watch on television such as the news or a chat show
2 a small booklet that tells people about a show, concert or a play • The names of the actors are in the **programme**.

progress / 'prəʊgres / noun advancing, improvement • Ben got a prize for his **progress** in English.

pup

project / 'prɒdʒekt / noun a piece of work usually about one subject • Our next **project** will be about space.

promise / 'prɒmɪs / verb to say you will do something • Nina **promised** to do all her homework at the weekend.

prop / prɒp / noun short form of 'property' an object an actor uses on stage • Lily is Red Riding Hood and her **prop** is a basket.

properly / 'prɒpə(r)li / adverb well, in a good way • Don't hurry your homework and please do it **properly**.

propose / prə'pəʊz / verb suggest, put forward an idea • As it's raining, I **propose** we go to see a film this afternoon.

protect / prə'tekt / verb to stop damage from happening to someone or something • Wear sunglasses to **protect** your eyes from strong light.

protective / prə'tektɪv / adjective having the quality of protecting

proud / praʊd / adjective feeling pleased because of something you have done or that another person has done • Dad is **proud** of me for getting good marks and I'm **proud** that I've won the class prize.

proudly / 'praʊdli / adverb in a proud way, feeling pleased with yourself • Ben walked **proudly** onto the stage to get his medal.

provide / prə'vaɪd / verb to give • The teacher **provided** the children with paper so they could write their stories.

public / 'pʌblɪk / adjective for everyone • In our town we have a **public** swimming pool where all the children learn to swim. **in public** where everyone can see

pull / pul / verb to hold onto something and move it towards you • Ben **pulled** his T-shirt out of his bag. phrasal verb **pull down** to pull something until it falls down • The farmer **pulled down** the old barn then he put up a new one.

pullover / 'pʊləʊvə(r) / noun a piece of clothing for the upper part of the body that is made of wool and is put on by pulling it over the head

pup / pʌp / noun the young of animals such as a seal

pupil

pupil / 'pju:p(ə)l / noun the black round part in the middle of the eye

puppet / 'pʌpɪt / noun a specially made doll that has strings on the arms, legs and head so that it can be made to move like a person

puppeteer / ,pʌpɪ'tiə(r) / noun a person who performs using puppets

pure / pjʊə(r) / adjective without anything else mixed in • He gave a shout of **pure** joy when he got the job.

purpose / 'pɜ:(r)pəs / noun the reason for something or aim of something • The **purpose** of a guidebook is to help you find out about places.
on purpose, deliberately He broke the window **on purpose**.

purse / pɜ:(r)s / noun a small bag that you can keep money in

push / pʊʃ / verb to put your hands against something and move it away from you • Our car broke down so we had to **push** it to a garage.

put / put / verb to place • Anna **put** her new computer on her desk.
phrasal verb **put on**

1 to practise and prepare in order to perform • The English students **put on** a performance of 'King Lear' by Shakespeare.

2 to wear, to get dressed in something • **Put on** your coat because it's cold.

puzzle / 'pʌz(ə)l / noun a game or activity that makes you think hard • Can you do this crossword **puzzle**?

pyramid / 'pɪrəˌmɪd / noun a solid shape with a square base and three equal sides

Qq

qualification / ,kwɒlɪfɪ'keɪʃ(ə)n / noun a level of skill or education sometimes shown by passing an exam or test • You need good **qualifications** to get a well-paid job.

qualified / 'kwɒlɪfaɪd / adjective having passed a test or exam to do something • Dan is now a **qualified** doctor and he's started work at the hospital.

qualify / 'kwɒlɪfaɪ / verb to reach the level needed in order to do something • Ben ran really fast and he has **qualified** for the final.

raft

quality / 'kwɒləti / noun

1 how good something is • This carpet is of excellent **quality** so the price is high.

2 a positive thing about a person's character • His kindness is his chief **quality**.

3 a feature of something • The natural **qualities** of the rainforest must be protected.

4 a high standard • He is a man of **quality** and people look up to him.

quarrel / 'kwɒrəl / verb to have a very big argument with somebody • Polly **quarrelled** with her brother because he took her pen without asking.

queen / kwi:n / noun the wife of a king or a woman who rules a country on her own

queue / kju: / noun people waiting in a line • There was a long **queue** for the bus this morning.

quick / kwɪk / adjective fast • It was a **quick** journey to London and it took only half an hour.

quickly / 'kwɪkli / adverb at speed • If you drive very **quickly** you might have an accident.

quiet / 'kwaɪət / adjective not noisy or making much sound • We must be **quiet** because the baby is sleeping.

quietly / 'kwaɪətli / adverb in a quiet way • Everybody was working **quietly** when the head teacher came in.

quite / kwaɪt / adverb a little but not very • I felt **quite** tired after school but I still did my homework. I **quite** enjoyed the film but I don't want to see it again.

Rr

Rr

rabbit / 'ræbɪt / noun a furry animal with long ears and a short tail that hops and lives in holes in the ground

radiant / 'reɪdɪənt / adjective shining, glowing • Dad's face was **radiant** with happiness when my sister was born.

radio / 'reɪdiəʊ / noun a way of receiving sound • Mum likes to listen to music on the **radio**.

raft / rɑ:ft / noun a flat boat sometimes made from pieces of wood fixed together • The sailors made a **raft** from parts of the sinking ship.

ragged

ragged / 'ræɡɪd / adjective

1 torn and dirty • *The poor man wore old **ragged** trousers.*

2 untidy and uneven • *The old carpet had **ragged** edges.*

raging / 'reɪdʒɪŋ / adjective strong, violent •

*Many ships sank in the **raging** storm.*

railway / 'reɪlweɪ / noun where a train runs • *The **railway** goes along the valley.*

rain / reɪn / noun the water that falls from clouds in the sky

rainbow / 'reɪnbəʊ / noun the arc of light with seven coloured bands which appears when the sun shines after rain

ramp / ræmp / noun a slope that has been constructed • *Dad drove the car up the **ramp** and onto the ship.*

rap / ræp / noun a kind of modern song that has a strong rhythm

rare / reə(r) / adjective unusual, not often seen

• *The giant panda is very **rare** and not many people have seen one.*

rather / 'rɑːðə(r) / adverb quite a lot • *My little brother was being **rather** naughty at the shops so Dad took him home. **would rather**, prefer to I like the beach but today I **would rather** go to the sports club.*

ravine / rə'viːn / noun a deep, narrow valley between rocks • *The river flowed fast through the **ravine**.*

Rr

reach / ri:tʃ / verb

1 to be able to get hold of • *Anna stood on a chair to **reach** the shelf.*

2 to arrive somewhere • *We **reached** the city at midnight.*

react / ri'ækt / verb to do an action because of something you have seen or heard • *When my cousin got his exam marks he **reacted** by jumping up and down.*

read / ri:d / verb to look at words in a book or magazine and understand them • *Ben **reads** a football magazine every week.*

ready / 'redi / adjective prepared for something that is going to happen • *It's time to leave for school but Ben isn't **ready** because he hasn't cleaned his teeth.*

refer to

realise / 'riəlaɪz / verb to understand something

• *Ben was very hot and his mum **realised** that he was ill.*

really / 'riəli / adverb

1 very • *This is a **really** difficult question.*

2 truly • *Ben isn't **really** lazy but he does work too slowly.*

receive / rɪ'si:v / verb to get something that someone sends to you • *We **received** a letter from my uncle yesterday.*

recently / 'ri:s(ə)ntli / adverb not long ago • *We moved to this town **recently** so we don't know anyone.*

recognise / 'rekəɡnaɪz / verb to see somebody and know who it is • *I **recognised** my cousin when she got off the train and I ran to greet her.*

record / rɪ'kɔː(r)d / verb

1 to note information • *When we were doing our space project, we **recorded** the nights when we could see the moon.*

2 to store sound so that it can be listened to at another time • *The sound engineer **recorded** the orchestra when they played at the City Hall.*

record / 'rekɔː(r)d / noun the best score in a sport or game • *The school **record** for running 100 metres is 12.9 seconds.*

recover / rɪ'kʌvə(r) / verb to get better • *Anna broke her leg but she has completely **recovered** and now she can play tennis and swim again.*

reduction / rɪ'dʌkʃ(ə)n / noun less, a smaller amount • *There has been a **reduction** in the number of children in the class.*

reed / ri:d / noun a tall thin plant that grows at the edges of rivers and lakes

reef / ri:f / noun a long line of rocks just under the surface of the sea • ***Reefs** are dangerous to ships because they are hard to see.*

refer to / rɪ'fɜː(r) to / phrasal verb

1 to look at something such as a book for information • *Please **refer to** your dictionaries to find the correct spelling.*

2 to mean • *The notice says 'Keep out' but does it **refer to** the building or the garden as well?*

3 to mention somebody or something • *The professor **referred to** the prize winners in his speech and said they had done well.*

referee

referee / ,refə'ri: / noun the person who makes sure that the players in a game keep to the rules • A player pushed the goalkeeper and the **referee** blew his whistle.

reflect / rɪ'flekt / verb to send light back from a shiny surface • The jewels in the queen's crown **reflected** the candlelight.

refrigerate / rɪ'frɪdʒəreɪt / verb to put in a refrigerator • It's best to **refrigerate** raw meat especially in hot weather.

refuse / rɪ'fju:z / verb to say no to something • My uncle **refuses** to travel by plane because he hates flying.

regain / rɪ'geɪn / verb to get back • Jack **regained** his confidence in himself when he won a prize for maths.

region / 'rɪ:dʒ(ə)n / noun a large area • No trees grow in this **region** because it is too high and too cold.

regular / 'regjʊlə(r) / adjective
1 arranged evenly with the same amount of time in between • There is a **regular** train service from here to the city and I think they run every ten minutes.
2 happening often • I'm a **regular** visitor to the City Museum.

rehearsal / rɪ'hɜ:(r)s(ə)l / noun practice for a play or concert

reindeer / 'reɪn,dɪə(r) / noun an animal with large antlers that lives around the Arctic

relate / rɪ'leɪt / verb to connect or join in some way • Lack of exercise is **related** to poor fitness.

relax / rɪ'læks / verb to slow down without hurrying or feeling under pressure to rush • We **relaxed** when we got to the airport on time.

relay / 'ri:leɪ / noun an activity that is done in parts • The rescue was done as a **relay** between the police and the helicopter pilot. **relay race**, a race in which several people each run part of the distance In a 400 metre **relay race**, each runner runs 100 metres.

release / rɪ'li:s / verb to let go • Dad caught the butterfly in a glass then **released** it outside.

reliance / rɪ'laɪəns / noun the act of depending on something or someone for help or support • Bella's **reliance** on her brother meant she was lonely when he went to college.

rescue

relief / rɪ'li:f / noun the happy feeling when a worry is ended • It was a big **relief** when I finished my English project.

rely on / rɪ'laɪ ,ɒn / phrasal verb to have trust in something or someone • Grandma **relies on** Mum to do her shopping for her. Don't **rely on** good luck to pass your exams!

remember / rɪ'membə(r) / verb
1 to think of something from the past • I **remember** visiting my great grandfather when I was three.
2 to not forget something but keep it in mind • **Remember** to check your spelling before you hand in your work.

remind / rɪ'maɪnd / verb to make someone think of something they should do, or of facts and information • The teacher **reminded** the students to finish their projects. Dad **reminded** me that it is Mum's birthday tomorrow.

remove / rɪ'mu:v / verb to take away • The portrait of the queen has been **removed** for cleaning.

renewable / rɪ'nju:əb(ə)l / adjective can be made again as new • In a **renewable** forest big trees are cut down and new ones are planted.

repeat / rɪ'pi:t / verb
1 to say again • The teacher said the words and the children **repeated** them.
2 to do again • The dancer **repeated** the movement until it was perfect.

reporter / rɪ'pɔ:(r)tə(r) / noun a person who writes news reports for a newspaper • The **reporter** interviewed the firemen after the fire.

represent / ,reprɪ'zent / verb to stand in place of something • In our play we used a big piece of blue material to **represent** the sea. Ben **represented** his class in the school quiz.

reproduction / ,rɪ:prə'dʌkʃ(ə)n / noun the making of new life • The **reproduction** of a butterfly begins with a tiny egg.

request / rɪ'kwest / noun a wish • It is Grandma's **request** that we visit her tomorrow.

rescue / 'reskju: / verb to save someone from something • Ten sailors were **rescued** from the sinking boat.

Rr

rescue

rescue / 'reskju: / noun the action of saving someone • *Twenty people helped in the **rescue** of the injured mountain climber.*

reserve / rɪ'zɜ:(r)v / noun a player who does not play at first but who can take the place of another if necessary during the game or match

respond / rɪ'spɒnd / verb to reply to a question or situation by doing or saying something • *I asked him if he was lost but he didn't **respond**. The teacher showed us a live snake and we all **responded** by screaming.*

response / rɪ'spɒns / noun a written or spoken reply • *We had 100 **responses** to our poster about starting a computer club. We asked the policeman what was happening but he gave no **response**.*

rest / rest / noun

1 the other part • *Please do the **rest** of your homework on your own.*

2 a short break when you stop what you are doing and relax • *We stopped for a **rest** when we were halfway up the mountain.*

result / rɪ'zʌlt / noun

1 mark or grade • *Did you get a good **result** in your exam?*

2 an event that happens as a consequence of something else • *Joe didn't revise and the **result** was that he failed.*

return / rɪ'tʃ:(r)n / verb to go back to a place • *The queen **returned** to her palace after the battle.*

return / rɪ'tʃ:(r)n / noun the act of returning to a place • *On her **return**, the queen was cheered by the people.*

Rr

review / rɪ'vju: / noun a short description of something with a person's opinion about it • *I'm not going to see that film because the **review** said it was really boring.*

revise / rɪ'vaɪz / verb to look at work again • *Please **revise** your spellings for the test.*

rhyme / raɪm / verb when two words end with the same sounds • *'Bright' **rhymes** with 'white'.*

rhythm / 'rɪðəm / noun the pattern of sounds in music or poetry • *Dancers move to the **rhythm** of the music.*

rich / rɪtʃ / adjective having a lot of money and owning a lot of things

roar

ride / raɪd / verb

1 to sit on the back of an animal such as a horse or on a bike and control it as it goes along • *Sam is learning to **ride** his new motorbike.*
2 to travel in a vehicle • *We **rode** to the City Museum in a taxi.*

ridicule / 'rɪdɪkju:l / verb to make fun of • *It is very unkind to **ridicule** other people.*

ridiculous / rɪ'dɪkjʊləs / adjective silly, stupid • *Ben wanted to go swimming in the rain but we all thought it a **ridiculous** idea.*

right / raɪt / adjective

1 correct • *Well done, you've got the **right** answer.*
2 the opposite side to the left • *Most people write with their **right** hand.*

right / raɪt / noun the side of the body that is towards the east when you are facing north • *The station is in the next street on the **right**.*

rim / rɪm / noun edge • *The cup was painted blue with gold around the **rim**.*

ring / rɪŋ / noun

1 a piece of jewellery that is worn on the finger • *The rich lady had **rings** on the fingers of both her hands.*
2 a circle • *The children joined hands and stood in a **ring**. **ring road**, a road around a large town or city that forms a complete ring around the centre*

ring / rɪŋ / verb

1 to make the sound of metal hitting metal when a bell is moved • *Bells **ring** all over the city to mark the New Year.*
2 to make a sound like a bell to show that a phone call is being received • *Ben was reading when the telephone **rang**.*
3 to make a phone call • *Mum **rang** the doctor when Nina was ill.*

risk / rɪsk / noun a chance of danger • *Running across the road is a **risk**. **at risk**, in danger When their boat sank the sailors were **at risk** of drowning.*

river / 'rɪvə(r) / noun the water that flows in channels across the land towards the sea

road / rəʊd / noun the way that leads from one place to another that cars and vehicles use

roar / rɔ:(r) / verb the sound made by a large animal such as a lion or a large machine

robot

robot / 'rəʊbɒt / noun a machine that can do a lot of different actions without stopping • *Some cars are built by robots.*

rock / rɒk / noun

1 the very hard material that is part of the surface of the earth • *A cave is a large hole in rock.*

2 a piece of the hard material • *A large rock rolled down the hill and crashed onto the road.*

rock / rɒk / verb to move from side to side • *The bottle rocked sideways for a moment before it fell over.*

rod / rɒd / noun a long straight piece of wood or metal **fishing rod**, a long, thin, round piece of wood with a long string and a hook at the end • *Dad's fishing rod is very strong and he catches big fish.*

role / rəʊl / noun

1 a part in a play or scene • *Anna played the role of the heroine in the school play.*

2 what a person does because of position or a situation • *It is the role of a prime minister to lead the government. The role of a parent is to bring up children well.*

roll / rəʊl / noun a small round shape of bread, enough for one person

roller skates / 'rəʊlə(r) ,skets / noun (plural) skates worn on the feet with four wheels underneath

roof / ru:f / noun the top part of a house or vehicle • *When it's stormy outside, we can hear the rain falling on the roof.*

root / ru:t / noun the part of a plant or tree that grows under the ground • *The roots of a plant keep it fixed into the ground.*

rope / rəʊp / noun a long, strong material that you can use for tying things • *The farmer tied his donkey to a tree with a rope.*

rose / rəʊz / noun a flower with a lot of petals that is often pink but can be other colours such as red, white or yellow

rosy / 'rəʊzi / adjective pink coloured

rough / rʌf / adjective uneven • *The bark of a tree feels rough.*

run

round / raʊnd / adverb from one place to another • *Ben was bored so he asked his friend to come round.*

round / raʊnd / preposition in a circle • *The dog ran round the tree.*

round / raʊnd / adjective shaped like a circle • *A ball is round.*

route / ru:t / noun way • *We took the shortest route to get to the coast.*

row / rəʊ / verb to move a boat by using long flat pieces of wood • *The sailors rowed towards the island.*

rubber / 'rʌbə(r) / noun what you use for removing pencil marks • *If you make a mistake, use your rubber to rub it out.*

rubbish / 'rʌbɪʃ / noun

1 things that are not wanted and are thrown away • *Sometimes there is rubbish in the street and it looks terrible.*

2 a silly or untrue idea • *Ben said "There are little green men on Mars" but Jack said "That's rubbish!"*

rude / ru:d / adjective having bad manners, not polite • *It is rude to talk when your teacher is speaking.*

ruins / 'ru:nz / noun (plural) parts of old buildings that fell down a long time ago • *Archaeologists discovered these ruins last year.*

rule / ru:l / noun a command that everyone must follow • *You must wear your uniform because it's a school rule.*

rule / ru:l / verb to control • *The Romans ruled Britain 2,000 years ago. rule over*, to be in charge of people and tell them what to do *An emperor rules over many thousands of people.*

ruler / 'ru:lə(r) / noun

1 the person who controls a country or region • *The pharaohs were the ancient rulers of Egypt.*

2 a long, thin piece of wood or plastic you use for measuring and drawing straight lines

run / rʌn / verb

1 to move by taking steps quickly • *We had to run to catch the bus because we were late.*

2 to organise • *I'm helping to run the chess club so every week I set up the tables.*

3 to flow • *The River Thames runs through the middle of London.*

runway

4 to work • The car engine was **running** so I didn't hear what Dad said.

phrasal verbs

1 **run away** to go away from somewhere or something very fast • The hunters saw the deer but it **ran away** and they couldn't catch it.

2 **run out** to have no more of something • Mum **ran out** of sugar so I went to the shop to buy some more.

runway / 'rʌnweɪ / noun the long straight surface on the ground that a plane uses to take off and land

rush / rʌʃ / verb to hurry or do something quickly • We **rushed** to the station because we were late for the train. Don't **rush** your homework – do it carefully.

rush / rʌʃ / noun a sudden strong movement forwards • When the party started, there was a **rush** for the cakes. A sudden **rush** of wind blew the papers off the desk.

rusty / 'rʌsti / adjective metal that has turned to a red-orange colour and is damaged because of rainwater and bad weather • The lock was **rusty** and the key would not turn.

Ss

sack / sæk / noun a large bag for keeping vegetables and other food in

sad / sæd / adjective unhappy • Ben felt very **sad** when his best friend moved to another city.

sadden / 'sæd(ə)n / verb to make someone sad • It will **sadden** my aunt if we do not visit her next week.

sadness / 'sædnəs / noun the feeling of being sad • There was **sadness** in the castle when the old king died.

safe / seɪf / adjective in a good place and away from danger • The mouse felt **safe** in its hole.

safety / 'seɪfti / noun freedom from danger • During the Great Fire of London the people found **safety** in boats on the river.

sail / seɪl / noun the large piece of cloth that hangs from a ship's mast • The wind blew the **sails** and the ship began to move.

sail / seɪl / verb to make a boat move using a sail

save

sailor / 'seɪlə(r) / noun

1 a person who works on a large ship or boat

2 a person who sails a boat for pleasure

salad / 'sæləd / noun a mixture of fresh vegetables eaten as part of a meal

salt / sɔːlt / noun

1 a powder or crystal that is left when a liquid has dried up

2 the white powder or crystal that is added to food • A little **salt** is important in your diet but too much **salt** is bad for you.

same / seɪm / adjective exactly like another • My best friend has the **same** name as me and we're both called Lucy.

same / seɪm / pronoun copy • The man clapped his hands and his little girl did the **same**.

sample / 'sɑːmp(ə)l / noun a small amount of something that shows you what the rest of it is like • Try a **sample** of this cheese and if you like it, I'll buy a large piece.

sand / sænd / noun the tiny bits of hard material that you find on the beach or in the desert
sand dunes, hills made of sand that you see in the desert

sandals / 'sænd(ə)lz / noun (plural) light shoes that do not cover your toes

sandwich / 'sæn(d)wɪtʃ / noun a small meal or snack made of two flat pieces of bread with other food such as meat or salad in between

satchel / 'sætʃ(ə)l / noun a kind of bag for carrying papers or school books in

satellite / 'sætələɪt / noun a machine that travels in space and sends signals • There are hundreds of **satellites** in orbit round the earth.

satisfaction / ,sætɪs'fækʃ(ə)n / noun a feeling of being pleased • Mr Brown felt great **satisfaction** when he finished building his house.

sauce / sɔːs / noun a thick liquid that is served as part of a meal

save / seɪv / verb

1 to rescue a person from danger • The firemen **saved** our neighbours when their house caught fire.

2 to keep • I am **saving** my money because I want to buy a computer.

saw

3 to press controls on a computer to keep information • *Don't forget to **save** your project when it is finished.*

phrasal verb **save up** to put small amounts of money in the bank or a money box until there is a much larger amount

saw / sɔː / noun a tool with sharp teeth for cutting wood

say / seɪ / verb to use words to express something such as information, a feeling or an idea • *Ben **said** that he was sorry for forgetting to do his homework.*

scared / skeə(r)d / adjective to feel frightened • *Harry is **scared** of the dark.*

scary / 'skeəri / adjective frightening

scene / siːn / noun

- 1 the place where something happens • *The police went to the **scene** of the accident.*
- 2 one of the parts that a play is divided into • *In the first **scene** the evil king trapped the hero and in the second **scene** the hero escaped.*

scenery / 'siːnəri / noun objects like trees and houses that are on stage for a play • *This paper beanstalk is **scenery** for 'Jack and the Beanstalk'.*

scent / sent / noun

- 1 a nice smell • *The **scent** of roses always reminds me of Grandpa and his garden.*
- 2 a liquid with a particular smell for putting on the body • *Aunt Rose bought an expensive bottle of **scent** in Paris.*

school / skuːl / noun the place where children go to learn

science / 'saɪəns / noun the study of the world and what it does using experiments and finding out facts

science fiction / ,saɪəns 'fɪkʃ(ə)n / noun a type of story that is usually set in the future

scientist / 'saɪəntɪst / noun a person who works in science as a profession

scissors / 'sɪzə(r)z / noun a small tool with two blades and handles for cutting

sclera / 'skliərə / noun the white part of the eye

score / skɔː(r) / verb to win a point or a goal • *The Blue team has just **scored** five points.*

second

score / skɔː(r) / noun the number of points or goals each team has • *What was the **score** at the end of the game?*

scream / skriːm / verb to shout in a high voice • *Do not **scream** when you are in the playground.*

screen / skriːn / noun

- 1 a flat surface for showing films on
- 2 the surface where information and pictures are displayed on your computer or monitor

screwdriver / 'skruːdraɪvə(r) / noun a tool used for turning screws

script / skript / noun the words of a play • *Molly has learned all her words in the **script**.*

scrutinise / 'skruːtɪnaɪz / verb to look at something very carefully • *The archaeologist **scrutinised** the box before he opened it.*

sculpture / 'skʌlptʃə(r) / noun a model of a person or object made by an artist from materials such as stone, marble or metal • *Some of the oldest **sculptures** in the world were found in Egypt.*

sea / siː / noun the large area of water between countries

seal / siːl / noun a sea animal that swims well, eats fish and spends some time on the shore • *Around the coast of Scotland you can see grey **seals**, resting on the rocks.*

search / sɜː(r)tʃ / noun the action of looking for something or someone • *The **search** for the king's tomb was unsuccessful.*

season / 'siːz(ə)n / noun

- 1 one of the four parts of the year based on the weather • *The **seasons** are spring, summer, autumn and winter.*
- 2 a particular time of the year • *There are many visitors here in the holiday **season**.*

seasonal / 'siːz(ə)nəl / adjective of the seasons or a particular season • *These cherries are **seasonal** fruits and they only grow here in the summer.*

seaweed / 'siːwiːd / noun plants that grow in or at the edge of the sea • *When the tide goes out you can see the **seaweed** in the rock pools.*

second / 'sekənd / noun

- 1 the next one after the first
- 2 one sixtieth part of a minute • *There are 60 **seconds** in one minute.*

secret

secret / 'si:kɹət / noun information that only one person or a few people know • When you keep a **secret** you mustn't tell anyone what you know.

secret / 'si:kɹət / adjective known by only a few people • The castle has a **secret** entrance.

see / si:/ verb

1 to notice with your eyes • Ben **saw** the lion just before it disappeared into the forest.

2 to watch a film • We went to **see** the new film at the cinema.

3 to visit • Our uncle came to **see** us yesterday.

seed / si:d / noun the tiny part of a plant which falls onto the ground when the flower dies and grows into a new plant

seize / si:z / verb to grab hold of quickly and firmly • The policeman **seized** the thief as he was climbing out of the window.

selected / si'lektɪd / adjective chosen • These are the **selected** dates for our holiday.

sell / sel / verb to get money for something that you have • Farmers **sell** their vegetables in the market.

semi-final / ,semi'faɪn(ə)l / noun the match that is played between two teams or players to decide which one will be in the final

send / send / verb

1 to post something to someone • I **sent** a letter to Grandma to thank her for my present.

2 to arrange for something to be taken to another person or place • The farmer **sent** sacks of cotton to the factory in a van.

3 to tell someone to go to a place or do something • Mum **sent** me to get some apples at the shop.

4 on a computer: the instruction to send an email message to another person

sensation / sen'seɪʃ(ə)n / noun a feeling you have in your mind or your body • Walking down the street, Sam had the **sensation** that someone was following him. This medicine gives a burning **sensation** but it soon stops.

sense / sens / noun

1 a natural ability, particularly sight, smell, hearing, taste and touch • Some dogs have an excellent **sense** of smell and can follow the tracks of people who are lost.

shade

2 the meaning of a word • The word 'run' has several different **senses**.

3 thoughtfulness, wisdom • I hope you all had the **sense** to do your revision before the exam. **make sense**, to be reasonable and properly done This story doesn't **make sense** and I can't understand the plot at all.

sensible / 'sensəb(ə)l / adjective

1 reasonable and practical, well thought out • It's a **sensible** idea to take a raincoat if you think it's going to be wet today.

2 well-behaved • We have a visitor today so please be **sensible** while he's here.

separable / 'sep(ə)rəb(ə)l / adjective can be divided into different groups • These pens are **separable** so you can just buy the colours you need.

separate / 'sepəreɪt / verb to put in different places • The girls wouldn't stop talking so the teacher **separated** them.

separate / 'sep(ə)rət / adjective apart from other things, on its own • Dad has a **separate** room for his study.

serious / 'sɪəriəs / adjective very bad • There was a **serious** accident yesterday when two cars hit each other.

servant / 'sɜ:(r)v(ə)nt / noun a person who does tasks in the home for the owner and their family, and receives payment

session / 'seʃ(ə)n / noun a period of time of a particular length • Our practice **session** started at three and finished at four.

set off / ,set 'ɒf / phrasal verb to begin a journey • We are going to **set off** for London tomorrow.

setting / 'setɪŋ / noun the place where things happen in a book, play or film • The **setting** for 'Little Red Riding Hood' is a forest.

set up / ,set 'ʌp / phrasal verb to put up • The fisherman **set up** a table in the market and began to sell his fish.

several / 'sev(ə)rəl / adjective a few, a small number of • There are **several** ways to travel to the islands.

shade / ʃeɪd / noun a place where sunlight does not fall because it is stopped by an object • The lions were sleeping in the **shade** of a tree.

shadow

shadow / 'ʃædəu / noun the dark area that is made when something blocks the light • *The man stood in the open doorway making a long shadow across the floor.*

shadowy / 'ʃædəui / adjective full of shadows • *The dark, shadowy forest is a bit scary.*

shady / 'ʃeɪdi / adjective without much sunlight • *It's always shady in the forest.*

shake / ʃeɪk / verb

1 to move something backwards and forwards quickly • *Mum shakes the rug when it is dirty so all the dust flies out.*

2 to turn your head a few times to show the answer 'No' • *Ben asked Grandma if she wanted a drink but she shook her head.*

shallow / 'ʃæləu / adjective not deep • *The pool is shallow – it is only ten centimetres deep.*

shape / ʃeɪp / noun the outline that something has • *A square and a circle are different shapes.*

shape / ʃeɪp / verb to form something into a particular shape • *The potter shaped the clay into a round bowl.*

share / ʃeə(r) / verb to divide into two or more parts and give to another person or several people • *There are six of us but the cake is huge so we can share it between us.*

shark / ʃɑː(r)k / noun a large fish with a fin and very sharp teeth

sharp / ʃɑː(r)p / adjective

1 able to cut • *It's best to use a sharp knife to chop vegetables.*

2 ready and quick to notice • *The class was sharp in the lesson and understood the grammar easily.*

sharp-eyed, noticing details *A sharp-eyed policeman noticed that the car had a splash of red paint on it.*

sharpen / 'ʃɑː(r)pən / verb to make sharp • *Mr Brown sharpened his axe before he began to chop the wood.*

sharply / 'ʃɑː(r)pli / adverb in a sudden way • *The road turned sharply to the right.*

shawl / ʃɔːl / noun a piece of cloth that a woman wears around her shoulders to keep warm or for decoration

sheep / ʃiːp / noun a farm animal that is kept for its wool and for meat

shoot

sheet / ʃiːt / noun

1 a large piece of cloth that is put on a bed

2 a large piece of paper for writing or drawing on

shelf / ʃelf / noun a piece of wood that is fixed to a wall for putting things on • *Ben has some books, a clock and a lamp on the shelf next to his bed.*

shell / ʃel / noun the hard hollow shape that some sea creatures live inside

shellfish / 'ʃel,fɪʃ / noun sea creatures that have their own shell that they carry on their backs and live in

shield / ʃiːld / noun a large round or rectangular piece of thick wood or metal that soldiers used to carry to protect themselves in battle

shimmer / 'ʃɪmə(r) / verb to reflect a gentle light that seems to shake slightly • *The surface of the lake shimmered in the moonlight.*

shine / ʃaɪn / verb

1 to send light • *The sun shines on earth.*

2 to reflect light • *The sea was shining in the sunlight.*

shiny / 'ʃaɪni / adjective looking bright because of the light that is being reflected • *A new coin always looks shiny.*

ship / ʃɪp / noun a very large boat that goes on the sea and oceans

shirt / ʃɜː(r)t / noun a piece of clothing for men and boys that covers the upper part of the body and arms and has buttons down the front

shocked / ʃɒkt / adjective unpleasantly surprised • *Grandad was shocked when he heard that his old friend had died.*

shoes / ʃuːz / noun (plural) what you wear on your feet

shoot / ʃuːt / noun the first green part of a new plant that shows above the ground • *When you see the first shoot, you know the plant will grow.*

shoot / ʃuːt / verb

1 to send an arrow using a bow • *The warriors shot their arrows at the enemy.*

2 to fire a gun • *The hunter shot at the rabbit.*

phrasal verb **shoot up** to go up fast • *The jet plane took off and shot up into the air.*

shooting star

shooting star / 'ʃu:tɪŋ stɑ:(r) / noun a piece of rock that makes a line of light as it falls through the sky and looks like a star • You can only see **shooting stars** at night.

shop / ʃɒp / noun a building where you can buy things

shoppers / 'ʃɒpə(r)z / noun (plural) people who go to shops or a market to buy things • This market is crowded with **shoppers** every day.

shore / ʃɔ:(r) / noun where the land meets the sea • The fishermen's boats were pulled up on the **shore**.

short / ʃɔ:(r)t / adjective

1 not measuring much in length or height • The sleeves of this coat are too **short** and they only just cover my elbows.

2 not taking much time • Our teacher gave us a **short** talk about exams.

3 with few words • You only have to write a **short** essay so 200 words is enough.

shorts / ʃɔ:(r)ts / noun (plural) a piece of clothing like trousers but with short legs to the knee or above the knee

shoulders / 'ʃəʊldə(r)z / noun (plural) the two parts of your body between your neck and the tops of your arms

shout / ʃaʊt / verb to speak in a very loud voice

show / ʃəʊ / verb

1 to let someone see something • Will you **show** me your picture?

2 ask someone to look at something • Ben took his homework to Mum and **showed** it to her.

Ss

show / ʃəʊ / noun a performance of a play or musical in the theatre or an entertainment in the street

shower / 'ʃəʊə(r) / noun

1 a number of small things falling in a group • The firework made a **shower** of sparks in the sky.

2 light rainfall • We got caught in a **shower** on the way home.

3 falling water that you can turn on and off in the bathroom • Dad has a **shower** every morning before he goes to work.

show-off / 'ʃəʊ,pf / noun a person who does things to show everyone how clever or rich they are • Nobody likes Jack because he's a terrible **show-off**.

silk

shudder / 'ʃʌdə(r) / verb to shake because of fear or dislike • Grandma always **shudders** when she sees a snake.

shuffle / 'ʃʌf(ə)l / verb to move around a little • Please sit still and stop **shuffling** your feet.

shut / ʃʌt / adjective

1 closed and not open for business • The shops are **shut** today because it's a feast day.

2 closed with the lid on • The box was **shut** and we couldn't see inside.

phrasal verbs

1 **shut down** to close permanently • The factory was **shut down** and many people lost their jobs.

2 **shut in** to keep inside • There are stables on the farm and at night, the horses are **shut in**.

3 **shut off** to turn off, to stop a connection • You must **shut off** the electricity before you touch the electrical wires.

4 **shut out** to keep out • Please close the door to **shut out** the cold.

5 **shut up** (informal) to be quiet • Dad told us to **shut up** because he couldn't hear the radio.

sick / sɪk / adjective ill • Many teachers and students were **sick** so the school was closed.

side / saɪd / noun the part of something that is not the front, back, top or bottom • There was a picture on the **side** of the van.

sigh / saɪ / noun the sound a person makes by breathing out of the mouth quietly

sigh / saɪ / verb to breath out of the mouth making a sound expressing a feeling • My sister **sighed** happily when she saw our new baby brother.

sight / saɪt / noun what you can see • The sailing boats were an amazing **sight**. **out of sight**, where no one can see The thief hid **out of sight**.

sign / saɪn / noun the name above a shop or on a building that is sometimes lit • The **signs** in the street were all different colours.

silence / 'saɪləns / noun the lack of sound • Inside the cave there was nothing but **silence**.

silent / 'saɪlənt / adjective not speaking or making any sound • The policeman asked a question but the thief remained **silent**.

silk / sɪlk / noun

1 the fine threads that are made by silkworms

silly

2 the soft material that is made by weaving silk threads

silly / 'sɪli / adjective not intelligent • *It was a silly idea to throw the ball at the window and now you've broken it.*

simmer / 'sɪmə(r) / verb to heat to boiling point

sing / sɪŋ / verb to make music with your voice

singer / 'sɪŋə(r) / noun a person who sings

single / 'sɪŋɡ(ə)l / adjective one alone • *There wasn't a single person in the street – it was completely empty.*

sister / 'sɪstə(r) / noun a female child of your parents

sit / sɪt / verb to be in a position so that the lower part of your body rests on a seat

sitting room / 'sɪtɪŋ ,ru:m / noun a living room in a house or flat where there are comfortable chairs

situation / ,sɪtʃu'eɪʃ(ə)n / noun the set of conditions that exist at a particular time • *The government is facing a difficult situation because of rising prices. The climber's situation became serious when the blizzard began.*

skate / skeɪt / verb

1 to slide over ice using special boots with metal blades on the bottoms

2 to travel across a smooth surface using special boots with small wheels on the bottom

skate / skeɪt / noun a special boot for skating

skateboard / 'skeɪt,bɔ:(r)d / noun a board with wheels for standing and moving on

ski / ski: / verb to travel across snow by sliding on skis and pushing yourself along with two poles

skiing / 'ski:ɪŋ / noun the act of travelling on skis

skilful / 'skɪlf(ə)l / adjective able to do something very well • *My cousin is a skilful writer and he's going to be a newspaper reporter.*

skill / skɪl / noun the ability to do something well • *Anna's skills are drawing and painting so her work is always well illustrated.*

skin / skɪn / noun the outside covering of the body of a person or animal • *An elephant has a thick, grey skin.*

slow

skip / skɪp / verb to move forward by hopping first on one leg then on the other

skirt / skɜ:(r)t / noun a piece of clothing worn by women that is fixed round the waist and covers the legs to the knee or lower

skis / ski:z / noun the long, flat pieces of wood that are worn on the feet for skiing

sky / skaɪ / noun the space above the earth that you see when you look up • *There are no clouds in the sky today and it is completely blue.*

skydive / 'skaɪ,darv / verb to jump out of a plane and fall through the air for a few minutes before opening a parachute and landing on the ground

skyscraper / 'skaɪ,skreɪpə(r) / noun a very tall building • *New York is famous for its skyscrapers.*

slam / slæm / verb to shut by pushing strongly • *Ben slammed the door because he was angry.*

slave / sleɪv / noun a person who is owned by another person and who works without any payment

sledge / sledʒ / noun a vehicle with a smooth bottom and no wheels for travelling across ice and snow

sleep / sli:p / verb to go into the natural state when your body rests and you are unconscious • *Most people sleep at night but some people have to work then and they sleep in the day.*

slide / slaɪd / verb to move smoothly

slide / slaɪd / noun playground equipment with a ladder on one side that you climb and a long smooth surface on the other side that you sit on and slide down to the ground

slip / slɪp / verb to slide on your feet by accident • *Ben slipped and fell down on the ice and broke his arm.*

slope / sləʊp / verb to have a gradual rise or fall • *The land slopes down towards the river then it slopes up towards the mountains.*

slope / sləʊp / noun a gradual rise or fall in the ground • *We walked up the mountain slope but we didn't climb the steep cliffs.*

slow / sləʊ / adjective not happening or moving fast

Ss

slowly

slowly / 'sləʊli / adverb in a slow way

small / smɔ:l / adjective not large • These shoes are too **small** and they're hurting my feet. Germs are so **small** that you can only see them with a microscope.

smallpox / 'smɔ:l,pɒks / noun a disease that leaves marks on the skin and can kill

smell / smel / noun the nature of something you notice when you breathe in through your nose
• The children felt hungry when the **smell** of baking bread came from the kitchen.

smell / smel / verb to use your nose to notice the smell of something • **Smell** this rose, it's lovely.

smile / smail / verb raise the corners of your mouth when you are happy or when something is funny

smoke / sməʊk / noun the white or grey clouds that rise up from a fire

smoky / 'sməʊki / adjective with a lot of smoke or smelling of smoke • The air was **smoky** because the forest was on fire.

smooth / smu:ð / adjective very flat, with no lumps • The new road is **smooth** and there are no stones on it.

snack / snæk / noun a small meal or a small amount of food eaten between main meals • We were in a hurry so we had a **snack** in the mall.

snail / sneil / noun a short creature with no legs that lives in a shell that it carries when it moves by sliding along

snake / sneik / noun a long, thin creature with a small head and no legs that moves by sliding and can coil itself round and round

sniff / snɪf / verb to smell something by taking air in through the nose • The dog **sniffed** the ground and began to follow the smell.

snout / snaut / noun the nose of a bear • A bear can dig up roots with its **snout**.

snow / snəʊ / noun small, light pieces of ice that fall to the ground in winter and cover it

snowboard / 'snəʊ,bɔ:(r)d / noun a flat piece of wood that can be fixed to the feet for sliding on snow

sometimes

snowdrift / 'snəʊ,drɪft / noun a very deep pile of snow blown by the wind • During the snowstorm, many cars got stuck in deep **snowdrifts**.

snowman / 'snəʊmæn / noun the shape of a person that children make out of snow

snow scooter / 'snəʊ ,sku:tə(r) / noun a small motorised vehicle that carries one person over snow

snowstorm / 'snəʊ,stɔ:(r)m / noun heavy snow and wind at the same time

snowy / 'snəʊi / adjective a lot of snow lying or falling

soar / sɔ:(r) / verb to rise high in the air at a smooth, steady pace • Eagles **soar** around the Californian mountains.

sob / sɒb / verb to cry with sadness

sock / sɒk / noun a piece of clothing that you put on your foot before you put on your shoes

sofa / 'səʊfə / noun a piece of furniture with a back and sides for two or three people to sit on

soft / sɒft / adjective light and pleasant to touch
• Our baby's hair is **soft**.

solar / 'səʊlə(r) / adjective to do with the sun
solar power, energy that is created by using sunlight **solar cells**, an object which changes energy from the sun into electricity • Some road signs are powered by **solar cells**.

soldier / 'səʊldʒə(r) / noun a person who is a member of an army

solo / 'səʊləʊ / adjective done by one person alone • In a **solo** sailing competition, one person sails the boat.

solve / sɒlv / verb to work out and understand • Ben likes to **solve** difficult sums.

some / sʌm / adjective

- 1 a few, no particular number • I'd like **some** apples, please.
- 2 an amount of • Would you like **some** juice?

some / sʌm / pronoun some people or things • Would you like **some** more?

sometimes / 'sʌmtaɪmz / adverb on some occasions but not always • I **sometimes** visit my grandmother after school.

son

spill

son / sʌn / noun the male child of a parent

song / sɒŋ / noun a piece of music with words that you sing

soon / suːn / adverb in a short time • *I don't like this film and I hope it ends **soon**!*

sore / sɔː(r) / adjective a little painful • *Dad's finger was **sore** after he hit it with a hammer.*

sort out / ˌsɔː(r)t 'aʊt / phrasal verb to work out a problem • *Our new TV didn't work so Dad took it to the shop and asked them to **sort it out**.*

sound / saʊnd / noun a noise • *Did you hear that strange **sound**? **sound engineer**, a person who works with sounds. The **sound engineer** recorded a train for the travel programme.*

sound / saʊnd / verb

1 to make a sound • *That car **sounds** loud and I think it's coming nearer.*

2 to get an idea about something because of what you have heard, read or been told about it • *The Winter Palace **sounds** amazing and I really want to see it.*

phrasal verb **sound like**

1 to sound the same as something else • *Thunder **sounds like** explosions in the sky.*

2 to seem likely • *Ben says he's feeling ill and it **sounds like** he won't be able to play tomorrow.*

soup / suːp / noun a liquid food that is made by cooking vegetables with meat or fish with water

source / sɔː(r)s / noun

1 where something starts • *The **source** of his anger was the loss of his money.*

2 the start of a river • *The **source** of the Nile is in Uganda.*

south / saʊθ / noun the direction on your right when you face the rising sun

souvenir / ˌsuːvə'niə(r) / noun an object people buy on holiday to remind them of the place • *My aunt bought a red bus as a **souvenir** of London.*

space / speɪs / noun the universe outside earth's atmosphere

spacecraft / 'speɪs,kraːft / noun a vehicle that can travel in space and carry people

space engineer / 'speɪs ɛndʒɪniə(r) / noun a person who makes machines that are used in space

space rocket / 'speɪs ˌrɒkɪt / noun a spacecraft that is designed to take off from earth and travel away from earth quickly

space station / 'speɪs ˌsteɪʃ(ə)n / noun a laboratory in space where people can live and work for long periods

spacesuit / 'speɪs,suːt / noun a set of clothes that covers the whole body and lets the person move and breathe in space

spacewoman / 'speɪs,wʊmən / noun a woman who travels in space

sparkling / 'spɑː(r)k(ə)lɪŋ / adjective shining and glittering • *The queen wore a crown that was **sparkling** with jewels.*

sparkly / 'spɑː(r)k(ə)li / adjective shiny and glittering • *The queen in the play wore a **sparkly** dress and crown.*

speak / spiːk / verb to talk • *Ben **spoke** to the class about his favourite hobby.*

spear / spiə(r) / noun a long pole with a sharp point on the end that is used for hunting and in the past was used in battle

special / 'speʃ(ə)l / adjective different from normal and usually better • *Yesterday was a **special** day because my aunt had twins.*

spectacular / spek'tækjʊlə(r) / adjective amazing to look at • *The gold and silver palace was really **spectacular**.*

spectator / spek'tetə(r) / noun a person who watches an outdoor sport or display • *The **spectators** applauded the winner of the race.*

speed / spiːd / noun how fast something goes • *The **speed** of the car made everyone gasp.*

speed / spiːd / verb to go very fast • *The boat was **speeding** through the waves.*

spend / spend / verb

1 to use money to pay for things • *Ben **spent** \$2 on a new magazine.*

2 to use time • *Ben **spent** an hour on his homework.*

spider / 'spaɪdə(r) / noun a small creature with eight legs that makes webs to catch food

spill / spɪl / noun the loss of a liquid from a container such as a glass, bottle or ship • *The oil **spill** from the tanker could be seen for many miles.*

Ss

spin

spin / spin / verb

- 1 to turn round and round • *The dancers were **spinning** faster and faster.*
- 2 to twist wool or cotton to make threads • *Machines are used to **spin** now but in the past people **spun** by hand.*

spine / spain / noun a sharp point on a plant or animal

splash / splæʃ / verb

- 1 the way falling water hits a surface, rises up a little then falls again • *It was raining hard and water was **splashing** off the roofs and down onto the road.*
- 2 to hit water and make drops fly in the air • *Don't **splash** water at people in the swimming pool.*

splendid / 'splendid / adjective marvellous, wonderful • *This **splendid** palace has more than 80 rooms around two huge courtyards.*

split / split / verb tear apart • *Mum **split** open the bag of sugar and poured it all into the bowl.*
phrasal verb **split up** separate and go in different directions • *The policemen **split up** to search the forest but they found nothing.*

sponge / spandʒ / noun a material that is soft, full of holes and which can hold water • *The man used water and a **sponge** to clean the car.*

spoon / spu:n / noun a small object you use for eating liquid food such as soup

sport / spɔ:(r)t / noun an activity such as football, tennis, swimming, etc.

spot / spot / verb notice by looking carefully • *We **spotted** three kinds of butterfly during our walk.*

spot / spot / noun a round shape; (in football) the round point or mark in the centre of a games pitch where the ball is put at the start of play

spread / spred / verb to tell a lot of people • *The mayor **spread** his ideas about the new city museum.*

spring / sprɪŋ / noun the season when the weather becomes warmer and plants begin to grow

spurt / spɜ:(r)t / verb to come out in a sudden strong flow • *The underground river **spurted** out from the rocks on the mountainside.*

square / skweə(r) / noun
1 a shape with four equal sides

stand

2 an open square area in the middle of a city with buildings on all four sides

squeak / skwi:k / noun the sound a mouse makes

squid / skwid / noun a sea creature with lots of tentacles

stable / 'steɪb(ə)l / noun a building on a farm for keeping horses or donkeys in

stadium / 'steɪdiəm / noun a large area for sports with seats all round for spectators

staff / sta:f / noun the people who work in a place such as a business or any public building • *The **staff** at the city hall are always very helpful.*

stage / steɪdʒ / noun the raised area on which actors perform

stage directions / 'steɪdʒ dɪ'rekʃ(ə)nz / noun (plural) the instructions to actors in a play

staircase / 'steə(r)keɪs / noun stairs going from one floor to another floor in a building • *The castle had a wide stone **staircase**.*

stairs / steə(r)z / noun (plural) a set of steps going from one level in a building to another

stall / stɔ:l / noun a table in the street or in a market for selling things from

stamp / stæmp / noun the piece of paper you buy and put on a letter before you send it • *Ben put his letter in an envelope and stuck a **stamp** on it.*

stand / stænd / verb to be on your feet with straight legs
phrasal verbs

1 **stand by** to continue to support someone or something • *The scientist **stood by** his ideas and later they were found to be right. Jim's parents **stood by** him when he failed his exams.*

2 **stand in for** take the place of someone in doing something • *Ben was too ill to be in the play so Joe **stood in for** him and performed the part very well.*

3 **stand out** to appear different from the others around • *My cousin always **stands out** in a crowd because he has red hair.*

4 **stand up** to get up onto your feet from a sitting position • *It is polite to **stand up** when a visitor comes into the classroom.*

5 **stand up for** to be ready to help and support • *Ben **stood up for** his friend when the class bullies were nasty and told them to go away.*

star

storm

star / stɑ:(r) / noun a distant object in space that shines at night

stare / steə(r) / verb to look hard at someone or something

starfish / 'stɑ:(r)fɪʃ / noun a creature that is shaped like a star with five pointed arms

starry / 'stɑ:ri / adjective with a lot of stars • We looked up at the **starry** night sky.

start / stɑ:(r)t / verb to begin

start / stɑ:(r)t / noun the beginning • The **start** of the race was exciting because everyone moved at once.

startle / 'stɑ:(r)t(ə)l / verb to surprise suddenly • Dad **startled** Mum when he came home in the middle of the day.

state / steɪt / noun

1 the quality or condition of something at a particular time • Look at the **state** of your trousers, they're covered in dirt!

2 a nation or country **matter of state**, ideas and problems to do with ruling over the nation

statement / 'steɪtmənt / noun a speech or sentence that someone says • In his **statement**, the government official said that everything was under control.

statue / 'stætʃu: / noun a model of a person or animal made from hard material like stone or marble

stay / steɪ / verb

1 to not move from a place • Let's **stay** inside while it's raining.

2 to live in a place for a short time • My cousin is **staying** with us for the holidays.

phrasal verb **stay up** continue awake and doing things until very late at night • If you **stay up** very late you'll be tired the next day.

steady / 'stedi / adjective not moving about or falling over • The sailor kept the boat **steady** while we got into it.

steal / sti:l / verb to take something that is not yours • The thief **stole** a very old sword from the museum.

steam / sti:m / noun the cloud of tiny water drops that rises from hot liquid • **Steam** came out of the factory chimney.

steam / sti:m / verb to send up a cloud of tiny water drops into the air • The pot of soup was **steaming** over the fire.

steel / sti:l / noun a strong metal used in construction

steep / sti:p / adjective sloping upwards sharply • The hill was **steep** and it took us ages to get to the top.

steeply / 'sti:pli / adverb in a sudden way • The mountains rose **steeply** above the valley. The price of bread has gone up **steeply** this year.

stem / stem / noun the long, straight part of a plant • Some plants have leaves growing on the **stem**.

step / step / noun the raised, flat area at the entrance to a building that you walk onto as you go in • We walked up the wide **steps** to the front door of the museum.

step / step / verb to move forward by putting one foot in front of the other • Sam **stepped** into the lake.

stick / stɪk / noun a long thin piece of wood

stick / stɪk / verb to join one thing to another using glue

sticky / 'stɪki / adjective made of or covered in something that sticks to other things • We ate cakes made with honey and sugar and they made our fingers **sticky**. **sticky tape**, a long role of narrow plastic that is sticky on one side that you cut pieces from to stick things together

still / stɪl / adverb continuing up to this time • It's late and Ben is **still** doing his homework.

still / stɪl / adjective not moving • The water in the pool was completely **still** so that the surface was a perfect mirror.

stone / stəʊn / noun

1 the hard material that rocks are made of • This old house is built of large blocks of **stone**.

2 a very small piece of rock • It's unkind to throw **stones** at animals.

stop / stop / verb to no longer move • The policeman held up his hand and the cars **stopped**.

storm / stɔ:(r)m / noun bad weather when there is wind, thunder and lightning and it rains heavily

Ss

straight

straight / streɪt / adjective not bending, curving or curling • The road was **straight** for many kilometres. Anna's hair is **straight** but she wishes it was curly.

stranded / 'strændɪd / adjective unable to leave a place • When the planes could not take off, many passengers were **stranded** at the airport.

strange / streɪndʒ / adjective odd, unusual

stranger / 'streɪndʒə(r) / noun someone you do not know • The **stranger** who spoke to my uncle asked where the station was.

stream / stri:m / noun a very small river

street / stri:t / noun a road in a town or city

strength / strengθ / noun how strong something is • The **strength** of the bridge was not enough for the lorry.

strict / strikt / adjective demanding obedience and giving little freedom • Our teacher is very **strict** and we get into trouble if we talk in lessons or don't do our homework.

striker / 'straɪkə(r) / noun (in football) a player whose task is to move forward and score goals

striking / 'straɪkɪŋ / adjective clear, obvious, remarkable • His ability to concentrate is **striking** and he studies for hours.

string / strɪŋ / noun long, thin material that is used for tying things • Mum wrapped the present in pretty paper then tied it with coloured **string**. The puppet walked when the man pulled the **strings** on its legs.

strong / strɒŋ / adjective

1 powerful, able to move heavy things • A horse is a **strong** animal.

2 not easily damaged • The archaeologist used a **strong** box to put the old vase into.

structure / 'strʌktʃə(r) / noun any kind of built object • The pyramids are ancient **structures** and the London Eye is a modern **structure**.

strut / strʌt / verb

1 (a pigeon or other large bird) to walk with slow steps and the head held up

2 to walk in a confident and proud way • The film star was proud of his prize and he **strutted** onto the stage.

succeed

student / 'stju:d(ə)nt / noun a person who is learning • My cousin is a **student** at the university.

studio / 'stju:diəʊ / noun a special room where something is made • Artists work in a **studio**. **radio studio**, the room where radio programmes are recorded

study / 'stʌdi / noun a room for reading and writing activities • Dad is working in his **study** – he's writing a book.

study / 'stʌdi / verb to find out and learn about something • My cousin is **studying** English in London.

stunning / 'stʌnɪŋ / adjective amazing, wonderful • What a fantastic goal! And what a **stunning** player.

stunt / stʌnt / noun something that is done to impress someone or get attention • Climbers abseiled down the museum as an advertising **stunt** when it opened.

style / staɪl / noun the way that something is made or done • Dad thinks that the modern **style** of the building is ugly. Ben has a very good writing **style** but his spelling is not so good.

subheading / 'sʌbˌhedɪŋ / noun a heading in a text that comes after the main heading • You can read the **subheadings** to find out what parts of the text are about.

subject / 'sʌbdʒɪkt / noun

1 something you learn about in school • My favourite **subject** is science.

2 a person or thing that is the main feature of a TV or radio programme or a written article • The snow leopard was the **subject** of this week's 'Rare Animals' programme.

submersible / sʌb'mɜ:(r)səb(ə)l / noun an underwater exploration vehicle

substance / 'sʌbstəns / noun a particular type of material such as powder or glue, or a liquid • A sticky **substance** was coming from the bark of the tree.

substitute / 'sʌbstɪˌtju:t / noun (in football) a player who takes the place of another during a game

succeed / sək'si:d / verb to do something you wanted to do • Ben **succeeded** in learning to play the piano.

successful

successful / sək'sesf(ə)l / adjective achieving something • *Our team was **successful** this year and we won the cup.*

such / sʌtʃ / adjective of a more than usual kind • *We saw **such** amazing animals. **such as**, for example I like soft fruit **such as** bananas and strawberries.*

suddenly / 'sʌd(ə)nli / adverb happening quickly, all at once • ***Suddenly**, lightning flashed across the sky.*

suffer / 'sʌfə(r) / verb to feel hurt and pain • *Ben **suffered** a lot when he broke his arm.*

suggest / sə'dʒest / verb to put forward an idea • *Mum **suggested** that we should go for a picnic.*

suggestion / sə'dʒestʃ(ə)n / noun an idea • *We all made **suggestions** for our project and we chose the best one.*

suitcase / 'su:tkeɪs / noun a box shape with a handle for carrying your clothes and possessions in when you travel

sum / sʌm / noun a calculation in maths when you add, subtract, divide or multiply numbers

summer / 'sʌmə(r) / noun the hottest season of the year

sun / sʌn / noun the star that is nearest to the earth and gives us light and heat

sunglasses / 'sʌn,glɑ:sɪz / noun (plural) glasses with dark glass that you wear to protect your eyes when the sun is bright

sunny / 'sʌni / adjective what the weather is like when the sun is shining

supermarket / 'su:pə(r),mɑ:(r)kɪt / noun a large shop that sells lots of different kinds of goods especially food

support / sə'pɔ:(r)t / noun

1 help • *When my aunt was very ill, we gave **support** to her family by doing the shopping and cooking.*

2 approval and encouragement • *Dad gave his **support** to my decision to train as a doctor.*

3 the object or objects that hold something else up • *The main **supports** of this bridge are the three stone columns in the centre.*

support / sə'pɔ:(r)t / verb to hold up • *Four legs **support** a table.*

suspend

supporter / sə'pɔ:(r)tə(r) / noun a person who supports someone or something • *My cousin's a **supporter** of the national team.*

suppose / sə'pəʊz / verb to think or believe something • *Anna **supposed** that she would fail the test but she didn't.*

sure / ʃʊə(r), ʃʊə(r) / adjective certain, to know that something is true • *Are you **sure** you've read the text properly? The archaeologist was **sure** that the necklace was very old.*

surf / sɜ:(r)f / verb

1 to look at different sites on the internet, one after another • *She spends hours **surfing** the internet.*

2 to ride on waves on a board • *It's exciting to **surf** on really big waves.*

surge / sɜ:(r)dʒ / verb to go forwards powerfully and quickly • *The children **surged** through the school gate when lessons ended.*

surgeon / 'sɜ:(r)dʒ(ə)n / noun a doctor who does operations • *Nowadays, **surgeons** have tiny cameras to help them look inside a body.*

surprise / sə(r)'praɪz / noun an unusual event or an event that you do not expect • *It was a big **surprise** when Ben won the chess competition because he only started playing three months ago. **in surprise**, with the feeling caused by something unexpected or astonishing I opened the dirty little box and gasped **in surprise** when I saw the diamond ring inside.*

surprised / sə(r)'praɪzd / adjective feeling surprised because something unexpected has happened

surround / sə'raʊnd / verb to be on all sides of something • *The sea **surrounds** an island.*

survey / 'sɜ:(r)veɪ / noun people's views about something made by recording their answers to questions • *The class **survey** showed that most children played basketball but few children played tennis.*

survive / sə(r)'vaɪv / verb to continue living or existing • *This plant will not **survive** if you don't water it!*

suspend / sə'spend / verb to hang something • *The flag was **suspended** from a long pole.*

Ss

suspension bridge

suspension bridge / sə'spenʃ(ə)n brɪdʒ / noun
a type of bridge that hangs from strong steel ropes that are fixed to towers

suspicious / sə'spiʃəs / adjective

- 1 strange, not usual • *That man with the sunglasses and the black hat looks very **suspicious**.*
- 2 thinking that someone or something is wrong, guilty or strange • *The detective was **suspicious** of the man because he kept changing his answers.*

suspiciously / sə'spiʃəsli / adverb

- 1 in a way that looks strange and wrong • *That man has been looking in the window of the jewellery shop for half an hour and I think he's behaving very **suspiciously**.*
- 2 with a feeling that something is wrong • *The man standing outside the bank was holding a large hammer and the policeman looked at him **suspiciously**.*

swan / swɒn / noun a large white bird with a long neck that lives on rivers and lakes

sweet / swi:t / noun a small piece of sweet food made mostly of sugar

sweet / swi:t / adjective

- 1 with a lot of sugar in • *Grandma likes very **sweet** tea.*
- 2 (informal) cute, pretty • *This is my baby sister, isn't she **sweet**?*

swift / swɪft / adjective very fast and smooth • *It was a **swift** trip across the river to get to the island.*

swim / swim / verb to move through water by using your arms and legs

swimming / 'swɪmɪŋ / noun the action of moving through water

Tt

swing / swɪŋ / noun playground equipment with a hanging seat that you sit on and move yourself backwards and forwards

swing / swɪŋ / verb to move backwards and forwards from a point • *The monkey was **swinging** from a branch of the tree.*

switch / swɪtʃ / noun something like a button that you press or move to make something work • *This **switch** controls the power to the TV.*
phrasal verb **switch on** / swɪtʃɒn / to make something work by moving a switch • *Let's **switch on** the lights, it's getting dark.*

tangle up

swoop / swu:p / verb to fly down quickly in a smooth movement • *The eagle **swooped** onto the rabbit and grabbed it.*

sword / sɔ:(r)d / noun a long sharp piece of metal with a handle that people used to fight with in the past

Tt

table / 'teɪb(ə)l / noun a piece of furniture with a large flat surface that is used to sit at to eat or to put things on

tablet / 'tæblət / noun a small, round block that contains medicine • *Sam had to take lots of **tablets** when he had a fever.*

tackle / 'tæk(ə)l / verb

- 1 (in football) to try to take the ball away from another player
- 2 to make a strong attempt to do something • *If you **tackle** difficult work with determination, you'll find it's not so hard.*

tadpole / 'tæd,pəʊl / noun a very young frog before it has grown legs

tail / teɪl / noun the long part at the end of an animal's body • *A crocodile has a strong, thick **tail**.*

take / teɪk / verb to get hold of something and keep it • *Ben **took** a cake from the plate.*

take notice, to look at or listen to someone or something with thought and care *You must **take notice** of what your teacher tells you. Sam didn't **take notice** of the danger sign and he fell into the river.*
phrasal verbs

- 1 **take back** to return something • *We **took** the computer **back** to the shop because it didn't work.*
- 2 **take off** to leave the ground and fly • *It is very noisy when a plane **takes off**.*

talk / tɔ:k / verb to speak to someone • *Nina **talked** to Grandma on the phone.*

talk / tɔ:k / noun a speech about something that a lot of people listen to • *The professor gave a **talk** about satellites.*

tall / tɔ:l / adjective having a lot of height, measuring a lot • *The very **tall** man had to bend down to get through the doorway.*

tangle up / 'tæŋg(ə)l 'ʌp / phrasal verb tie up, trap in an untidy way • *The lion was **tangled up** in the hunter's net.*

tanker

tanker / 'tæŋkə(r) / noun a very large ship used for carrying oil across seas and oceans • *If an oil **tanker** hits rocks, the oil can spill into the sea and cause terrible pollution.*

tap / tæp / noun a metal object for turning on water • *Mum turned on the **tap** and filled the jug.*

task / tɑːsk / noun a piece of work • *Ben's **task** this weekend is to help Grandpa in the garden.*

taste / teɪst / verb to have a flavour • *This ice cream **tastes** delicious.*

taxi / 'tæksi / noun a car that you can pay to ride in from one place to another

tea / tiː / noun

- 1 a hot drink made from leaves of a plant
- 2 a light meal that is sometimes eaten at the end of the afternoon

team / tiːm / noun a group of people who do an activity and often play against another group • *Ben is in the school swimming **team** because he swims very fast.*

tear / tiə(r) / noun a drop of water that comes from your eye when you cry

tear / tiə(r) / noun a break in material • *There was a long **tear** in Ben's jeans and Mum had to mend it.*

tear / tiə(r) / verb to pull apart • *The sharp thorns in the forest can **tear** your clothes.*

tease / tiːz / verb to make fun of someone • *My sister said that I had won the school prize but she was **teasing** me because it wasn't true.*

technique / tek'niːk / noun a way of doing something that uses a special skill • *Glazing is a **technique** for making a hard, shiny, coloured surface on pottery.*

technology / tek'nɒlədʒi / noun knowledge of machinery, systems and processes that make things work • *My cousin works in computer **technology**.*

teddy / 'tedi / noun a child's toy that looks like a bear

teeth / tiːθ / noun (plural) the hard white objects in your mouth that you use to eat with

telegraph / 'telɪgrɑːf / noun an old method of communicating by sending messages through wires or by radio waves

thick

telescope / 'telɪskəʊp / noun a piece of equipment shaped like a tube that can be used to make distant objects appear larger

television / 'telɪvɪʒ(ə)n / noun a piece of electrical equipment with a screen that is used for watching programmes

tell / tel / verb

1 to give someone information • *Can you **tell** me the time, please?*

2 to command • *The teacher **told** the class to be quiet.*

temper / 'tempə(r) / noun usual way of behaving • *Grandma is always in a good **temper** in the morning.*

tennis / 'tenɪs / noun a game in which players hit a ball over a net to each other using a large bat called a racket

tent / tent / noun a structure made from material supported by poles that can be used for sleeping in for a short time or living in all the time as a home • *Climbers carry **tents** to sleep in when they are on high mountains.*

tentacle / 'tentəkl(ə)l / noun the long arm of an octopus or squid

terrible / 'terəb(ə)l / adjective very bad • *Ben woke up because he had a **terrible** dream.*

terrified / 'terəfaɪd / adjective very scared • *Our dog is **terrified** of loud noises.*

terrifying / 'terəfaɪɪŋ / adjective very frightening • *The giant was **terrifying** and all the children ran away.*

test / test / noun a short exam • *We have a 20 minute **test** every week.*

textbook / 'teks(t)buk / noun a book used in study of a subject • *Remember to revise how the heart works in your science **textbook**.*

textile / 'tekstaɪl / noun cloth • *The factory produced **textiles** from silk and cotton.*

theatre / 'θɪətə(r) / noun the building where plays, shows and operas are performed

thick / θɪk / adjective

1 having a distance between two sides • *a **thick** piece of bread*

2 having a distance from top to bottom • *a **thick** fall of snow*

thief

3 with things growing closely together • *This polar bear has very **thick** fur.*

thief / θi:f / noun a person who takes things that do not belong to him

thin / θɪn / adjective

1 having a short distance between two sides • *a **thin** piece of paper*

2 not having much fat on the body • *My aunt became very **thin** when she was ill.*

thing / θɪŋ / noun

1 an object • *Is that **thing** with the noisy engine your latest invention?*

2 possessions • *Please put all your **things** away.*

3 an idea • *There are some interesting **things** in your essay.*

4 situation • *A funny **thing** happened on the way to school.*

5 activity • *I like doing **things** with my uncle.*

think / θɪŋk / verb

1 to believe something is true • *People used to **think** the world was flat.*

2 to have an opinion • *Ben **thinks** everyone should do a sport.*

3 to consider facts • ***Think** about using paragraphs before you start writing.*

4 to imagine • *I **thought** I saw someone in the shadows but there was no one there.*

thirsty / 'θɜ:(r)sti / adjective feeling the need to drink • *It was a hot day and the players were **thirsty** after the match.*

thorn / θɔ:(r)n / noun a sharp point that grows on some plants, bushes and trees

though / ðəu / conjunction

1 although • ***Though** he was small, Joe lifted the heavy box easily.*

2 even if • *Ben finished the race **though** he didn't come first.*

thousand / 'θauz(ə)nd / noun 1,000

threads / θredz / noun (plural) thin, fairly strong lengths of cotton or silk

threaten / 'θret(ə)n / verb to put in danger or risk of harm • *Our town is growing and it **threatens** the quiet countryside around it.*

thrilling / 'θrɪlɪŋ / adjective very exciting • *Our journey across Australia was a **thrilling** adventure.*

timetable

throat / θrəʊt / noun the tube inside your neck that takes in air and food • *If you have a cold, sometimes your **throat** feels sore.*

throne / θrəʊn / noun the special chair a king or queen sits in • *The king's **throne** was gold and silver.*

through / θru: / preposition from one side to the other • *We drove **through** the tunnel.*

throw / θrəʊ / verb to use your arm to send something from your hand and into the air • *Ben **threw** the basketball and Sam caught it.*

thunder / 'θʌndə(r) / noun the very loud sound you hear during a storm

thyme / taɪm / noun a kind of herb

ticket / 'tɪkɪt / noun a piece of paper that you are given when you buy a place to ride on a train, a bus or a seat in a theatre or stadium

ticket office / 'tɪkɪt ɒfɪs / noun the place where you can buy a ticket

tide / taɪd / noun the rise and fall of the seas around the world

tidy / 'taɪdi / adjective neat, with everything in the right place • *My aunt's house is always **tidy** because she hates a messy home.*

tidy / 'taɪdi / verb to put things neatly • *Please **tidy** your room before you go out.*

tightly / 'taɪtli / adverb strongly, firmly • *My sister sat on the swing and held on **tightly** while I pushed her.*

tile / taɪl / noun one of the flat pieces of baked clay or stone that can be used to make an outer covering to the roof of a building

time / taɪm / noun

1 minutes, hours and years, etc. • ***Time** passes slowly when you're bored.*

2 a measurement on the clock • *The **time** is four o'clock.*

3 a particular period • *a short **time**, We had a great **time**.*

4 an occasion • *It was the first **time** I went to school.*

5 a particular point when something happens • *It's **time** to go home.*

6 the time you have available • *I didn't have **time** to write my essay.*

timetable / 'taɪm,teɪb(ə)l / noun a chart which lists times that tell you when something

timid

regularly happens • *The train **timetable** shows when trains leave for London.*

timid / 'tɪmɪd / adjective easily scared • *Koala bears are **timid** creatures and they hide in the trees.*

tin / tɪn / noun a container for keeping food or liquid in for a long time until it is opened • *Mum bought a **tin** of beans at the supermarket.*

tinkle / 'tɪŋk(ə)l / verb to make a sound like a small bell • *The coin **tinkled** when I dropped it on the floor.*

tiny / 'taɪni / adjective very small

tired / 'taɪə(r)d / adjective needing to rest or sleep • *I've run five kilometres and now I'm really **tired**.*

title / 'taɪt(ə)l / noun the name of a book, text, film or poem

toad / təʊd / noun an animal like a large frog

today / tə'deɪ / noun this day that is happening now

toe / təʊ / noun one of the five individual parts at the end of your foot

together / tə'geðə(r) / adverb

1 in a group • *Sing this song **together**.*

2 one part to another part • *Ben glued the pieces of wood **together**.*

tomato / tə'mætəʊ / noun a small, round, red fruit that can be cooked but is often eaten fresh in a salad **tomato ketchup**, a sauce made of tomatoes

tomorrow / tə'mɒrəʊ / noun the day after today

too / tuː / adverb

1 more than is needed • *You're driving **too** fast!*

2 also, as well • *We went to the beach and Grandma came, **too**.*

tool / tuːl / noun an object that people use to do or make things • *A hammer and a saw are both useful **tools**.*

top / tɒp / noun

1 the highest point • *the **top** of the mountain*

2 the upper surface or part • *Mum cleaned the **top** of the table.*

top / tɒp / adjective best • *Ben got the **top** marks in the exam. **top floor**, the highest floor of a building **top speed**, the fastest speed possible*

traditional

*We ran for the train at **top speed** but we still missed it.*

torch / tɔː(r)tʃ / noun a light that works with a battery and can be easily carried • *Sam turned on the **torch** and the light shone into the cave.*

total / 'təʊt(ə)l / noun all the numbers or things added together • *There's a **total** of only five mistakes in this essay, which is very good.*

touch / tʌtʃ / verb

1 to put your hand on someone or something •

*When you **touch** silk it feels soft.*

2 when two things are against each other • *Her long dress **touched** the floor.*

touch / tʌtʃ / noun the act of touching • *The baby woke when he felt his mother's **touch**.*

tough / tʌf / adjective strong, not easily broken or damaged • *An elephant has a very **tough** skin.*

tour / təʊə(r) / noun a journey or visit made in order to see different places • *We went on a **tour** of London by bus.*

tourists / 'tʊərɪsts / noun (plural) people who visit interesting places in their own country or in different countries

tower / 'taʊə(r) / noun a very tall narrow structure that stands alone or can be part of a building • *A flag was flying from the **tower** of the castle.*

town / taʊn / noun a place where people live that is smaller than a city but larger than a village

track / træk / noun

1 the marks left on the ground by a person or animal • *We followed the tiger's **tracks** into the jungle.*

2 a section of recorded music or speech • *My favourite **track** is the first one on this CD.*

tractor / 'træktə(r) / noun a farm vehicle with two large wheels at the back and small wheels at the front that is used by farmers to pull machinery such as a plough across a field

trade / treɪd / noun buying and selling • *My uncle works in the jewellery **trade**.*

traditional / trə'dɪʃ(ə)nəl / adjective relating to old customs, stories or beliefs • *In England there are lots of **traditional** songs and stories but no **traditional** costume.*

traffic

traffic / 'træfɪk / noun all the vehicles that are on the roads such as cars, buses, lorries, etc. **traffic jam**, a queue of vehicles that has stopped or is moving very slowly because there are too many vehicles on the road

train / treɪn / noun a form of transport that travels on rails and that is made up of an engine and carriages in which passengers travel

train / treɪn / verb to show people how to do something well • Mr Brown **trains** us at Swimming Club and we are learning to swim faster.

trainer / 'treɪnə(r) / noun

1 a special shoe that you wear for sports such as running and basketball

2 a person who shows someone how to do something and helps them to do it better • Our football **trainer** makes us run two kilometres before we start our practice.

tram / træm / noun a vehicle like a bus that runs on special rails on the road in some cities

trampoline / 'træmpəˌliːn / noun a piece of sports equipment with a big area of tight material that you jump up and down on

trampolining / 'træmpəˌliːnɪŋ / noun the act of using a trampoline

translucent / trænˈsluːs(ə)nt / adjective clear or thin enough that light passes through

transparent / trænˈspærənt / adjective can be seen through • This plastic bag is **transparent** so you can see what is inside it.

transport / 'trænsˌpɔː(r)t / noun a way of travelling or moving goods from one place to another, using vehicles such as cars, buses, lorries, vans, etc. • In the Amazon rainforest, **transport** is mainly by boat.

trap / træp / verb to catch • People use nets to **trap** fish. The bird was **trapped** in the building when someone closed the window.

travel / 'træv(ə)l / verb to go from one place to another by walking or by vehicle

tray / treɪ / noun a flat piece of wood, metal or plastic for carrying things on • Grandma carried the cake and plates on a round **tray**.

trumpet

treasure / 'treʒə(r) / noun a collection of valuable items such as jewellery and objects made of gold and silver

treat / tri:t / noun something nice to do or have that you don't get every day • Dad took us to a restaurant as a **treat** on Mum's birthday.

treat / tri:t / verb to try to make better • The doctor **treated** 20 patients today.

treatment / 'tri:tment / noun care, making better • The best **treatment** for a small cut is to keep it clean.

tree / tri:/ noun a very tall plant that has a trunk and branches

tremendous / trə'mendəs / adjective wonderful • That was a **tremendous** film and I'd like to see it again.

trench / trentʃ / noun a long, narrow hole in the ground • The gardener dug a **trench** and planted potatoes in it.

tribe / traɪb / noun a large group of people who live near together and have the same language and traditions • Some **tribes** in South America live in the rainforest.

trick / trik / noun something that is done to deceive someone

tricky / 'trɪki / adjective a little difficult • Our test was **tricky** because there were some new words in it.

trip / trip / noun a short journey to visit a place or area • We went on a **trip** down the river on a boat.

trolley / 'trɒli / noun a container or flat board on wheels that you can push in order to move several objects at the same time • When we got to the station we put our luggage on a **trolley**.

trophy / 'trɒfi / noun a prize, often a metal cup

trousers / 'traʊzə(r)z / noun (plural) a piece of clothing that covers the lower part of the body and the legs

true / tru:/ adjective a fact or something that really happened • It is **true** that the earth is round. Ben said he saw a lion in the playground but of course it wasn't **true**.

trumpet / 'trʌmpɪt / noun a musical instrument made of metal that you blow

trunk

trunk / trʌŋk / noun

1 the main stem of a tree • Ben climbed the **trunk** of the old tree and sat on the branches.

2 the long nose of an elephant

trust / trʌst / verb to believe and have

confidence in someone • I'll lend you my pen because I **trust** you to give it back.

truth / tru:θ / noun what is true • You should always tell the **truth**.

try / traɪ / verb to do your best to do something

• Alfie **tried** to do a very difficult sum.

T-shirt / 'ti:ʃɜ:(r)t / noun a piece of clothing for the upper part of the body with short sleeves that is shaped like the letter T

tube / tju:b / noun a long, round pipe • Sometimes patients in hospital are given air through a **tube**.

tunic / 'tju:nɪk / noun a long, loose shirt • Roman soldiers wore **tonics**.

tunnel / 'tʌn(ə)l / noun an underground passage • In some cities, trains travel through **tunnels** under the ground.

turbine / 'tɜ:(r)baɪn / noun a machine that is turned by air or water to make electricity • On a wind farm the **turbines** are turned by the wind.

turn / tɜ:(r)n / verb

1 to move your body or part of your body round a little • Sam **turned** his head when he heard the crash behind him.

2 to move an object or part of an object • The plumber **turned** the tap and water gushed out.
phrasal verbs

1 **turn away** to turn your back towards someone or something • Sam asked Anna what the matter was but she just **turned away**.

2 **turn back** to turn round and face the opposite direction • Dad walked along the road then he **turned back** and waved goodbye to us.

3 **turn down** to refuse, to not accept • My cousin **turned down** a job in London because he got a better one in Manchester.

4 **turn into** to become • A tadpole **turns into** a frog.

5 **turn out** happen • The day started cloudy but it **turned out** to be the hottest day of the year.

6 **turn over** to move something from one side to the other • When you get to the bottom of the page, **turn it over** and continue reading.

uncertain

7 **turn up** arrive • Jack always **turns up** late for football practice.

turquoise / 'tɜ:(r)kwɔɪz / adjective a colour that is between blue and green

tutor / 'tju:tə(r) / noun a person who gives lessons to an individual or a small group

TV / ,ti: 'vi: / noun short form of 'television'

twice / twaɪs / adverb two times • I've been to London **twice**.

twig / twɪɡ / noun a small branch of a tree

twist / twɪst / verb to turn something round and round • Spinning is done by **twisting** two or more threads together. **twist round**, to turn suddenly Sam heard a noise behind him and he **twisted round** but no one was there.

twitch / twɪtʃ / verb to move a little • The rabbit **twitched** its nose.

Uu

ugliness / 'ʌɡlɪnəs / noun the quality of being ugly • The **ugliness** of the giant made all the children run away.

ugly / 'ʌɡli / adjective having a horrid, unpleasant appearance

ultimately / 'ʌltɪmətli / adverb in the end • He tried hard but **ultimately** he did not succeed.

umbrella / ʌm'brelə / noun an object that you can open up and hold over your head when it is raining or use as a sunshade when the sun is very strong

unbelievable / ,ʌnbɪ'li:vəb(ə)l / adjective cannot be believed • Only 60 years ago, the idea of space travel seemed **unbelievable** to most people.

unbelievably / ,ʌnbɪ'li:vəbli / adverb (informal) how well, badly or impressively something has been done • You've been **unbelievably** silly so you'd better say sorry. The cars were going **unbelievably** fast.

uncertain / ʌn'sɜ:(r)t(ə)n / adjective

1 not sure • Ben was **uncertain** about his homework so he asked his teacher to explain it.

2 not definite • Our trip to the beach is **uncertain** because the weather is bad.

Uu

uncle

uncle / 'ʌŋk(ə)l / noun the brother of your mother or father

unconscious / ʌn'kənʃəs / adjective not able to see, hear or speak, usually after an injury or during illness • *The patient was **unconscious** when he was brought to the hospital.*

under / 'ʌndə(r) / preposition below, at a lower place • *The river runs **under** the bridge.*

under-21 / 'ʌndə(r) 'twenti'wʌn / adjective less than 21 years old

underneath / 'ʌndə(r)'ni:θ / preposition below • *The cars went into the tunnel and drove **underneath** the river.*

unfold / ʌn'fəʊld / verb to open up from being folded • *The petals of the flower **unfolded** in the sunshine.*

unforgettable / ʌnfə(r)'getəb(ə)l / adjective always remembered and can never be forgotten • *Our visit to New York was **unforgettable**.*

unfortunate / ʌn'fɔ:(r)tʃ(ə)nət / adjective unlucky • *It was **unfortunate** that our car was parked under the bridge when it fell down.*

unfortunately / ʌn'fɔ:(r)tʃ(ə)nətli / adverb in a way that is sad or bad • ***Unfortunately**, many dolphins are killed every year. Jack didn't do any revision so, **unfortunately**, he didn't pass the exam.*

uniform / 'ju:nɪfɔ:(r)m / noun the special clothes that are worn by a particular group of people, such as schoolchildren, nurses, the police, etc.

unique / ju:'ni:k / adjective different to all the others and not the same as anything else

university / ju:'ni:vɜ:(r)səti / noun a place of education for adult students • *When I have finished school, I hope to go to **university**.*

unmissable / ʌn'mɪsəb(ə)l / adjective cannot be missed • *You must see the new film at the cinema, it's **unmissable**!*

untrue / ʌn'tru: / adjective not true

unusual / ʌn'ju:ʒʊəl / adjective different and not normal • *The lady's hat was **unusual** and everyone was looking at it.*

update / 'ʌpdet / noun information about the present time • *I went online to get a news **update**.*

van

upper / 'ʌpə(r) / adjective in the higher position • *The apartments on the **upper** floors have great views across the city.*

upside-down / 'ʌpsaɪd'daʊn / adverb with the top at the bottom and the bottom at the top • *I can't read the book because you're holding it **upside-down**!*

upstairs / ʌp'steɪ(r)z / adverb up the stairs to the next level • *Please go **upstairs** and fetch Grandma's bag.*

upstream / ʌp'stri:m / adverb further up the river • *The water is calm here but **upstream** it flows over rocks.*

urgently / 'ɜ:(r)dʒ(ə)ntli / adverb in a way that expresses a feeling of emergency, that something is needed or must happen immediately • *These medical supplies are **urgently** needed at the hospital.*

use / ju:z / verb to do something with a tool, machine or a part of your body to achieve a result • *We **use** our eyes to see. The carpenter **used** a saw, a hammer and some nails to make the table.*

useful / 'ju:sf(ə)l / adjective helpful for doing things • *Glue is very **useful** when you are making a model.*

usual / 'ju:ʒʊəl / adjective typical of what happens in most situations or what people do in most situations • *It is **usual** to thank your host at the end of a visit. My **usual** day for my music lesson is Tuesday.*

usually / 'ju:ʒʊəli / adverb in the normal, everyday way • *I **usually** work on my project at the weekend.*

Vv

vaccinate / 'væksɪneɪt / verb to give an injection to prevent disease

vaccination / 'væksɪ'neɪʃ(ə)n / noun the prevention of disease by giving an injection

valuable / 'væljuəb(ə)l / adjective equal to a lot of money • *The king's gold crown is very **valuable**.*

van / væn / noun a vehicle that is used for taking small loads from one place to another

variety

variety / və'raɪəti / noun

- 1 several different things mixed together • We are leaving the city for a **variety** of reasons.
- 2 a particular type of something • That **variety** of apple is very sweet.

various / 'vɛəriəs / adjective different and more than a few • I've read **various** books about rainforests but this one is the most interesting.

varnish / 'vɑ:(r)nɪʃ / noun a clear liquid that is hard when dry and can be painted on objects to protect them from knocks and scratches

vary / 'vɛəri / verb to be different • Students' views about the new rules **vary** a lot.

vase / vɑ:z / noun a container for putting flowers in

vast / vɑ:st / adjective very large • The Sahara is a **vast** desert.

vegetable / 'vedʒtəb(ə)l / noun a type of food that grows on plants or is a complete plant, such as peas, beans, potatoes, carrots, lettuce, etc.

vehicle / 'vi:ɪk(ə)l / noun transport that travels on the road such as a car, bus, lorry, van or taxi • Many **vehicles** were waiting to cross the bridge.

verse / vɜ:(r)s / noun several lines of a poem grouped together

vertical / 'vɜ:(r)tɪk(ə)l / adjective straight up • A completely **vertical** cliff is very difficult to climb.

very / 'veri / adverb a lot, extremely • A lion is a **very** fierce animal.

vet / vet / noun a doctor for animals

victorious / vɪk'tɔ:riəs / adjective having won something • The Greeks were **victorious** in their war against the Trojans.

video / 'vɪdiəʊ / verb to record sound and moving pictures

video / 'vɪdiəʊ / noun a recording of sound and moving pictures **video camera**, the machine that is used to make a video

view / vju: / noun

- 1 what you can see from a certain place • We had a **view** of the sea from our hotel.
- 2 opinion • Can you tell me your **view** of this new book – is it interesting or not?

voyage

view / vju: / verb to look out over an area or at an event • The old king **viewed** the battle in the valley from the top of the hill. **viewing box**, a place where you can go to watch an event *Usually there are comfortable seats in a viewing box.*

village / 'vɪlɪdʒ / noun a group of a small number of houses in the countryside • Most of the people who live in this **village** work on farms.

visible / 'vɪzəb(ə)l / adjective can be seen • The island is **visible** from the coast.

vision / 'vɪʒ(ə)n / noun sight, the ability to see • You have to have perfect **vision** to be a pilot.

visit / 'vɪzɪt / verb

- 1 to go to spend some time with a person • We **visited** Grandma every day when she was in hospital.
- 2 to go and look at a place • We **visited** the museum after we had been round the castle.

visit / 'vɪzɪt / noun the act of going to see a person or place • For students this year there will be a **visit** to a farm and a **visit** to the theatre.

visitor / 'vɪzɪtə(r) / noun a person who comes to see you • We had lots of **visitors** at home when my baby brother was born.

visor / 'vaɪzə(r) / noun a piece of clear plastic or a metal grid attached to a helmet that can be pulled down over the face to protect the eyes

voice / vɔɪs / noun the sounds someone makes when they speak • We could hear **voices** coming from the next room.

volcanic / vɒl'kænɪk / adjective to do with volcanoes • You can find **volcanic** rocks all round the world.

volcano / vɒl'keɪnəʊ / noun a place on the surface of the earth where hot rock rises up from below • Some **volcanoes** look like mountains.

volunteer / ,vɒlən'tɪə(r) / noun a person who does a task or action from their own free choice • Mum is a **volunteer** at the kindergarten and she reads stories to the children.

volunteer / ,vɒlən'tɪə(r) / verb to do a task or action from your own free choice • Ben, Sam and Jack **volunteered** to show the visitors around the school.

voyage / 'vɔɪɪdʒ / noun a journey by sea • The **voyage** from Europe to America took two weeks.

waft

wear

Ww

waft / wɒft / verb to float in the air without direction • *The smell of cooking meat **wafted** around the campfire.*

wait / weɪt / verb to stay in a place for a reason or for a future event • *We can **wait** here for the bus.*

waitress / 'weɪtrəs / noun a woman who serves at the tables in a restaurant or café

wake / weɪk / noun the waves made by a boat or ship travelling through water • *The seabirds floated up and down on the ship's **wake**. **wakeboarder**, a person who uses a wakeboard to travel through waves **Wakeboarders** get very wet!*

wake up / ,weɪk 'ʌp / verb to stop sleeping and open your eyes in the morning

walk / wɔ:k / verb to move by putting one foot in front of the other

wall / wɔ:l / noun

- 1 the upright side of a room or building • *The **walls** of the old house were made of stone.*
- 2 the brick or stone barrier around a piece of land or building • *A high **wall** surrounded the prison.*

wander / 'wɒndə(r) / verb to walk slowly without a clear direction • *We **wandered** through the city centre and admired the fine buildings.*

want / wɒnt / verb to feel you would like to have or do something • *Do you **want** to come swimming?*

war / wɔ:(r) / noun fighting between two armies or countries using weapons that goes on for a long time **wartime**, the period when war is happening

ward / wɔ:(r)d / noun the room in a hospital where patients are looked after • *There are usually several beds in a **ward**.*

Ww

warm / wɔ:(r)m / adjective a little bit hot • *We have **warm** days in spring when the sun is out.*

warning / 'wɔ:(r)nɪŋ / noun information that something bad is going to happen • *We saw a **warning** about the storm on TV.*

warrior / 'wɔ:riə(r) / noun fighter • *The chief went to war with 100 of his best **warriors**.*

wash / wɒʃ / verb to clean something with water

watch / wɒtʃ / verb to look at something for a period of time

watch / wɒtʃ / noun the instrument you wear for telling the time

watchful / 'wɒtʃf(ə)l / adjective watching carefully and with attention • *The soldiers were **watchful** as they walked through the dark forest.*

water / 'wɔ:tə(r) / noun the clear liquid that falls as rain and runs in rivers and fills ponds and lakes

waterfall / 'wɔ:tə(r),fɔ:l / noun the place where a river or stream falls down a rock or cliff • ***Waterfalls** always look beautiful.*

waterproof / 'wɔ:tə(r),pru:f / adjective able to prevent water from passing through • *Please wear your **waterproof** coat when you go out in the rain.*

waterwheel / 'wɔ:tə(r),wi:l / noun a wheel that is turned by the flow of a river • *When the river is full the **waterwheel** turns quickly.*

wave / weɪv / noun the water in the sea when it goes up and down • *The tiny boat was lifted high by the **waves**.*

wave / weɪv / verb to hold your hand up and move it around as a greeting to somebody or to say goodbye • *We **waved** to Dad until he turned the corner and disappeared.*

wax / wæks / noun the smooth material that candles are made of

way / weɪ / noun

- 1 a path, road or route to somewhere • *Can you tell me the **way** to the station, please?*
- 2 method • *Dad showed me the **way** to mix paint.*

weak / wi:k / adjective not strong • *The bridge is **weak** and if you walk on it, it might break.*

weapons / 'wepənz / noun (plural) things to fight or do harm with • *In the past, a soldier's **weapons** were a sword and a spear.*

wear / weə(r) / verb to have clothes or a piece of clothing on your body • *Ben is **wearing** a red shirt, shorts and trainers.*

weary

weary / 'wɛəri / adjective tired • We were **weary** after our long walk.

weave / wi:v / verb to make cloth by putting long threads over and under each other

weaver / 'wi:və(r) / noun a person who weaves cloth

web / web / noun the structure of fine threads that a spider makes to catch flies

webbed / webd / adjective with skin between the toes on the foot of a bird or animal to help swimming • Ducks have **webbed** feet.

website / 'web,sait / noun a place on the internet where information is available

wedding / 'wedɪŋ / noun the ceremony at which two people are married

weed / wi:d / noun a wild plant that is not wanted where it is • We took all the **weeds** out of Grandma's garden and she was very pleased.

week / wi:k / noun seven days

weekend / ,wi:k'end / noun the two days at the end of the week when many people do not work and schools are closed

weigh / wei / verb to measure the heaviness of something

weight / weɪt / noun how heavy something is • The **weight** of an elephant is about 5,000 kilograms.

weird / wiə(r)d / adjective very strange • The **weird** noise continued and we began to feel nervous.

welcome / 'welkəm / verb to greet someone in a friendly way when they arrive at your house and make them feel comfortable

weld / weld / verb to join two pieces of metal together by heating and melting the metal and pushing them together

well / wel / noun a deep hole in the ground that is made to reach water or oil that is a long way down

well / wel / adjective fine, in good health • My uncle has been ill but now he is **well** again.

well / wel / adverb skilfully, in a good way • Nina plays the violin very **well**.

well / wel / interjection
1 an exclamation in a conversation expressing

win

surprise • You mean Grandad's bought another new car? **Well!** I'm amazed.

2 an introduction to a reply in a conversation
• **Well**, I must tell you that the whole family is completely astonished.

west / west / noun the direction in which the sun sets

western / 'westə(r)n / adjective of the west

whale / weɪl / noun a very large sea mammal

wheel / wi:l / noun

1 one of the four round objects fixed to a car on which it moves as they turn

2 a round flat surface that can be turned very quickly on which a potter shapes pots out of clay

whirlpool / 'wɜ:(r)l,pu:l / noun water at sea turning in a circle very fast • Boats are sometimes pulled into a **whirlpool**.

whiskers / 'wɪskə(r)z / noun (plural) the long hairs near the nose or snout of an animal • A cat's **whiskers** help it to feel its way in the dark.

whisper / 'wɪspə(r) / verb to speak in a very low voice so that other people can't hear

whistle / 'wɪs(ə)l / noun the small object that a referee blows during a match as a signal to the players

wide / waɪd / adjective

1 having a long distance from one side to the other • The river is **wide** when it gets near the sea.

2 measuring a particular distance • This door is a metre **wide**.

wife / waɪf / noun a woman who is married to a man • My uncle's **wife** is a nurse.

wig / wɪɡ / noun a cover that looks like real hair that you can wear over your own hair

wild / waɪld / adjective living without help from people • Lions and crocodiles are **wild** animals.

wildlife / 'waɪld,lɑɪf / noun all things that live, including birds, plants and animals • Even a small garden has interesting **wildlife** in it.

win / wɪn / verb

1 to come first in a sport or game • Ben **won** the race easily and he was a minute ahead of the others.

2 to be the best • We had an art competition and Nina **won** it.

wind

wind / waɪnd / noun the air that blows around the planet and that you can feel

windmill / 'waɪn(d)mɪl / noun a building with four blades that are turned by the wind to make energy • A long time ago, **windmills** were used to power machines.

window / 'wɪndəʊ / noun the rectangular space in the side of a building that is filled with glass and which you can look through

windsurf / 'waɪn(d)sɜː(r)f / verb to travel over waves on a board with a sail • You have to be strong to **windsurf** well.

windy / 'waɪndi / adjective having a lot of wind

wing / wɪŋ / noun

- 1 the part of a bird or insect that moves up and down so that it flies
- 2 (in football) the player who plays at one side of the pitch

winner / 'wɪnə(r) / noun a person or object that wins

winter / 'wɪntə(r) / noun the coldest season of the year

wise / waɪz / adjective sensible, knowing a lot • Grandma did not study at a university but she is a very **wise** person.

wisely / 'waɪzli / adverb in a wise way • Ben acted **wisely** when he stayed at home to finish his project.

without / wɪð'aʊt / preposition not having • Do you want coffee **without** sugar?

wolf / wʊlf / noun a wild animal like a large dog

woman / 'wʊmən / noun a female adult

wonder / 'wʌndə(r) / verb to think about something with questions in your mind • Ben **wondered** what was in the box.

wonderful / 'wʌndə(r)fʊl / adjective extremely good • There's a **wonderful** view from the top of the tower.

Ww

wood / wʊd / noun the hard natural material that comes from trees and is used to make furniture, buildings, etc.

woodcutter / 'wʊd,kʌtə(r) / noun a person whose job is to cut wood from trees in the forest

wrap

wooden / 'wʊd(ə)n / adjective made of wood

wool / wʊl / noun the soft hair that grows on a sheep or goat

word / wɜː(r)d / noun a single unit of language that has a meaning by itself

work / wɜː(r)k / verb

- 1 to do a job • My Dad **works** in the hospital.
- 2 to run in the right way • Oh no, my computer has stopped **working**.

work / wɜː(r)k / noun a task or job that someone does • The farmer stopped his **work** at lunchtime.

workbench / 'wɜː(r)k,bentʃ / noun a table especially for making things on

workshop / 'wɜː(r)k,ʃɒp / noun a place where things are made

world / wɜː(r)ld / noun the planet we live on

worm / wɜː(r)m / noun a creature with no arms or legs that lives in the earth • **Worms** help to make good soil for plants.

worried / 'wʌrɪd / adjective afraid something bad has happened or is going to happen

worriedly / 'wʌrɪdli / adverb feeling that something is wrong

worse / wɜː(r)s / adjective less pleasant or less good than another • This essay is **worse** than that one because there are more spelling mistakes in it.

worse / wɜː(r)s / adverb less well than another • Jack played badly in the match today but Sam played **worse**.

worst / wɜː(r)st / adjective less good than all the others • This essay is the **worst** because it has the most spelling mistakes.

worst / wɜː(r)st / adverb less well than all the others • Joe played the **worst** because he let in six goals.

wounded / 'wuːndɪd / adjective hurt by gunfire or another weapon • The soldier was **wounded** in his leg.

wrap / ræp / verb to cover completely • Dan **wrapped** the present in red and green paper.

wrinkled

wrinkled / 'rɪŋk(ə)ld / adjective having lines after folding or because of age • *Grandpa has got a **wrinkled** face.*

write / raɪt / verb to use a pen or pencil to make words or numbers on paper

wrong / rɒŋ / adjective

1 incorrect • *I'm sorry but that's the **wrong** answer so you lose a point.*

2 not working properly • *There's something **wrong** with my computer and I can't connect to the internet.*

3 bad and a problem • *When Harry heard the explosion, he knew something was **wrong**. **go wrong**, happen in a bad way • *Nobody knew their words for the play and everything else **went wrong**, too.**

Xx

Yy

yak / jæk / noun a large animal like a bull with long hair and huge horns that lives in central Asia

year / jɪə(r) / noun 365 days

yesterday / 'jestə(r)deɪ / noun the day before today

young / jʌŋ / adjective new, not old

youth / ju:θ / noun a young male person

youth / ju:θ / adjective for young people • *There are several **youth** groups in our town, including the junior sports club and the drama club.*

zoology

Zz

zebra / 'zebrə / noun a striped animal like a horse that lives wild in Africa

zoo / zu: / noun a place where animals are kept in cages for people to come and look at • *The best **zoos** give their animals a lot of space to move around in.*

zoologist / zu'ɒlədʒɪst / noun a person who studies animals

zoology / zu'ɒlədʒi / noun the study of animals

